

Table of Contents

Introduction	1.1
Wrapping up Java Syntax	1.1.1
1. Introduction to Java	1.2
1.1 Essentials	1.2.1
1.2 Objects	1.2.2
2. Lists	1.3
2.1 Mystery of the Walrus	1.3.1
2.2 The SLList	1.3.2
2.3 The DLLList	1.3.3
2.4 Arrays	1.3.4
2.5 The AList	1.3.5
3. Testing	1.4
3.1 A New Way	1.4.1
4. Inheritance, Implements	1.5
4.1 Intro and interfaces	1.5.1
4.2 Extends, Casting, Higher Order Functions	1.5.2
4.3 Subtype Polymorphism vs. HOFs	1.5.3
4.4 Java libraries and packages	1.5.4
5. Generics and Autoboxing	1.6
5.1 Autoboxing	1.6.1
5.2 Immutability	1.6.2
5.3 Generics	1.6.3
6. Exceptions, Iterators, Iterables	1.7
6.1 Throwing and catching	1.7.1
6.2 Checked and Unchecked	1.7.2
6.3 Iterators and Iterables	1.7.3
7. Packages, Access Control, Objects	1.8
7.1 Packages	1.8.1
7.2 Access Control and objects	1.8.2
8. Efficient Programming	1.9

8.1 Encapsulation, API's, ADT's	1.9.1
8.2 Asymptotics I	1.9.2
8.3 Asymptotics II	1.9.3
8.4 Asymptotics III	1.9.4

Hug61B

This book is the companion to Josh Hug's version of CS61B, UC Berkeley's Data Structures course. The current version of the course can be found at datastructur.es/sp18.

<!--This course is about training you to be an efficient programmer [add more].

[VIDEO]-->

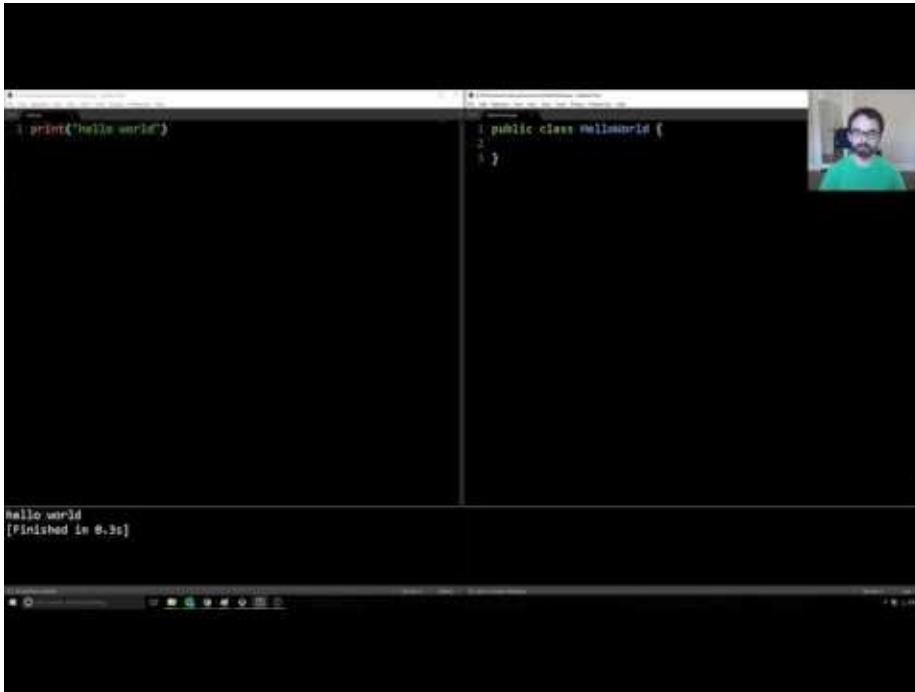
This course presumes that you already have a strong understanding of programming fundamentals. At the very least, you should be comfortable with the ideas of object oriented programming, recursion, lists, and trees. You should also understand how to use a terminal in the operating system of your choice. If you don't have such experience, I encourage you to check out CS61A, UC Berkeley's introductory programming course [CS61A](#).

If you already have experience with Java, you might consider skipping straight to chapter 2, though you might still get something by skimming the first chapter.

Licensing:

All materials for this course are distributed under a Creative Commons 4.0 BY-NC-SA license, which you can learn about in glorious human-readable terms [at this link](#). The basic idea is that it's all free, and you can even redistribute or remix the course content however you want, so long as you give credit to Josh Hug and also enforce the same license on any content you create. Sites like Chegg, CourseHero, etc. may not distribute my course materials.

Hello World



[Video link](#)

Let's look at our first Java program. When run, the program below prints "Hello world!" to the screen.

```
public class HelloWorld {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        System.out.println("Hello world!");
    }
}
```

For those of you coming from a language like Python, this probably seems needlessly verbose. However, it's all for good reason, which we'll come to understand over the next couple of weeks. Some key syntactic features to notice:

- The program consists of a class declaration, which is declared using the keywords `public class`. In Java, all code lives inside of classes.
- The code that is run is inside of a method called `main`, which is declared as `public static void main(String[] args)`.
- We use curly braces `{` and `}` to denote the beginning and the end of a section of code.
- Statements must end with semi-colons.

This is not a Java textbook, so we won't be going over Java syntax in detail. If you'd like a reference, consider either Paul Hilfinger's free eBook [A Java Reference](#), or if you'd like a more traditional book, consider Kathy Sierra's and Bert Bates's [Head First Java](#).

For fun, see [Hello world! in other languages](#).

Running a Java Program



[Video link](#)

The most common way to execute a Java program is to run it through a sequence of two programs. The first is the Java compiler, or `javac`. The second is the Java interpreter, or `java`.



For example, to run `HelloWorld.java`, we'd type the command `javac HelloWorld.java` into the terminal, followed by the command `java HelloWorld`. The result would look something like this:

```
$ javac HelloWorld.java  
$ java HelloWorld  
Hello World!
```

In the figure above, the \$ represents our terminal's command prompt. Yours is probably something longer.

You may notice that we include the '.java' when compiling, but we don't include the '.class' when interpreting. This is just the way it is (TIJTWII).

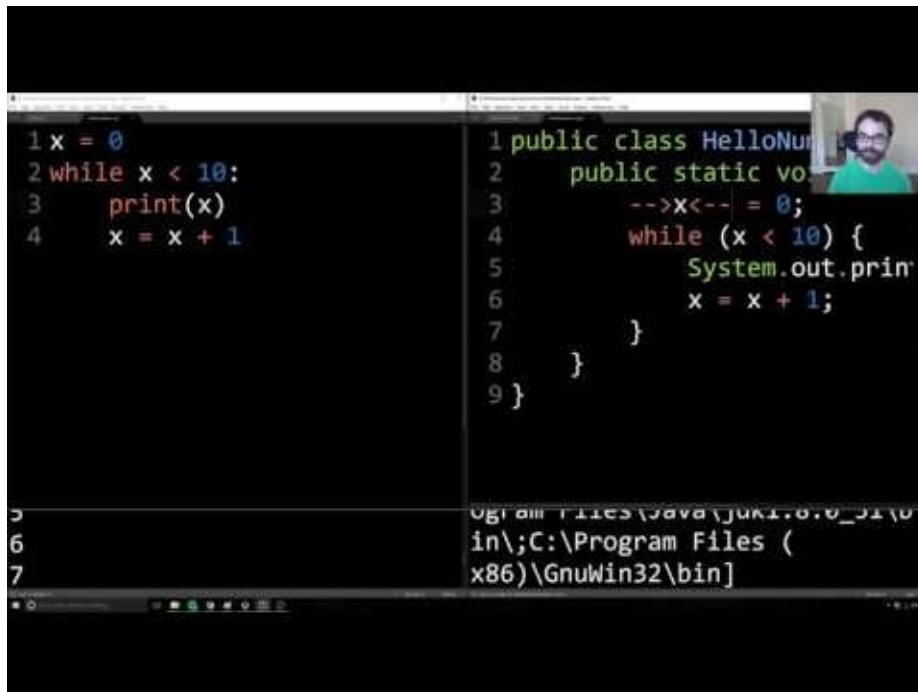
Exercise 1.1.1. Create a file on your computer called `HelloWorld.java` and copy and paste the exact program from above. Try out the `javac HelloWorld.java` command. It'll look like nothing happened.

However, if you look in the directory, you'll see that a new file named `HelloWorld.class` was created. We'll discuss what this is in a moment.

Now try entering the command `java HelloWorld`. You should see "Hello World!" printed in your terminal.

Just for fun. Try opening up `HelloWorld.class` using a text editor like Notepad,TextEdit, Sublime, vim, or whatever you like. You'll see lots of crazy garbage that only a Java interpreter could love. This is [Java bytecode](#), which we won't discuss in our course.

Variables and Loops



[Video link](#)

The program below will print out the integers from 0 through 9.

```

public class HelloNumbers {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        int x = 0;
        while (x < 10) {
            System.out.print(x + " ");
            x = x + 1;
        }
    }
}

```

When we run this program, we see:

```

$ javac HelloNumbers.java
$ java HelloNumbers
$ 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9

```

Some interesting features of this program that might jump out at you:

- Our variable `x` must be declared before it is used, *and it must be given a type!*
- Our loop definition is contained inside of curly braces, and the boolean expression that is tested is contained inside of parentheses.
- Our print statement is just `System.out.print` instead of `System.out.println`. This means we should not include a newline.
- Our print statement adds a number to a space. This makes sure the numbers don't run into each other. Try removing the space to see what happens.
- When we run it, our prompt ends up on the same line as the numbers (which you can fix in the following exercise if you'd like).

Of these features the most important one is the fact that variables have a declared type.

We'll come back to this in a bit, but first, an exercise.

Exercise 1.1.2. Modify `HelloNumbers` so that it prints out the cumulative sum of the integers from 0 to 9. For example, your output should start with 0 1 3 6 10... and should end with 45.

Also, if you've got an aesthetic itch, modify the program so that it prints out a new line at the end.

Gradescope

The work in this course is graded using a website called [gradescope](#). If you're taking the University of California class that accompanies this course, you'll be using this to submit your work for a grade. If you're just taking it for fun, you're welcome to use gradescope to check your work. To sign up, use the entry code MNXYKX. For more on gradescope and how to submit your work, see the [gradescope guide](#) (link coming later).

If you'd like, you can try submitting `HelloNumbers.java` under the `Lab 1` assignment.

Static Typing

One of the most important features of Java is that all variables and expressions have a so called `static type`. Java variables can contain values of that type, and only that type. Furthermore, the type of a variable can never change.

One of the key features of the Java compiler is that it performs a static type check. For example, suppose we have the program below:

```
public class HelloNumbers {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        int x = 0;
        while (x < 10) {
            System.out.print(x + " ");
            x = x + 1;
        }
        x = "horse";
    }
}
```

Compiling this program, we see:

```
$ javac HelloNumbers.java
HelloNumbers.java:9: error: incompatible types: String cannot be converted to int
    x = "horse";
               ^
1 error
```

The compiler rejects this program out of hand before it even runs. This is a big deal, because it means that there's no chance that somebody running this program out in the world will ever run into a type error.

This is in contrast to dynamically typed languages like Python, where users can run into type errors during execution!

In addition to providing additional error checking, static types also let the programmer know exactly what sort of object she is working with. We'll see just how important this is in the coming weeks. This is one of my personal favorite Java features.

To summarize, static typing has the following advantages:

- The compiler ensures that all types are compatible, making it easier for the programmer to debug their code.
- Since the code is guaranteed to be free of type errors, users of your compiled programs

will never run into type errors. For example, Android apps are written in Java, and are typically distributed only as .class files, i.e. in a compiled format. As a result, such applications should never crash due to a type error.

- Every variable, parameter, and function has a declared type, making it easier for a programmer to understand and reason about code.

However, we'll see that static typing comes with disadvantages, to be discussed in a later chapter.

Extra Thought Exercise

In Java, we can say `System.out.println(5 + " ")`. But in Python, we can't say `print(5 + "horse")`, as we saw above. Why is that so?

Consider these two Java statements:

```
String h = 5 + "horse";
```

and

```
int h = 5 + "horse";
```

The first one of these will succeed; the second will give a compiler error. Since Java is strongly typed, if you tell it `h` is a string, it can concatenate the elements and give you a string. But when `h` is an `int`, it can't concatenate a number and a string and give you a number.

Python doesn't constrain the type, and it can't make an assumption for what type you want. Is `x = 5 + "horse"` supposed to be a number? A string? Python doesn't know. So it errors.

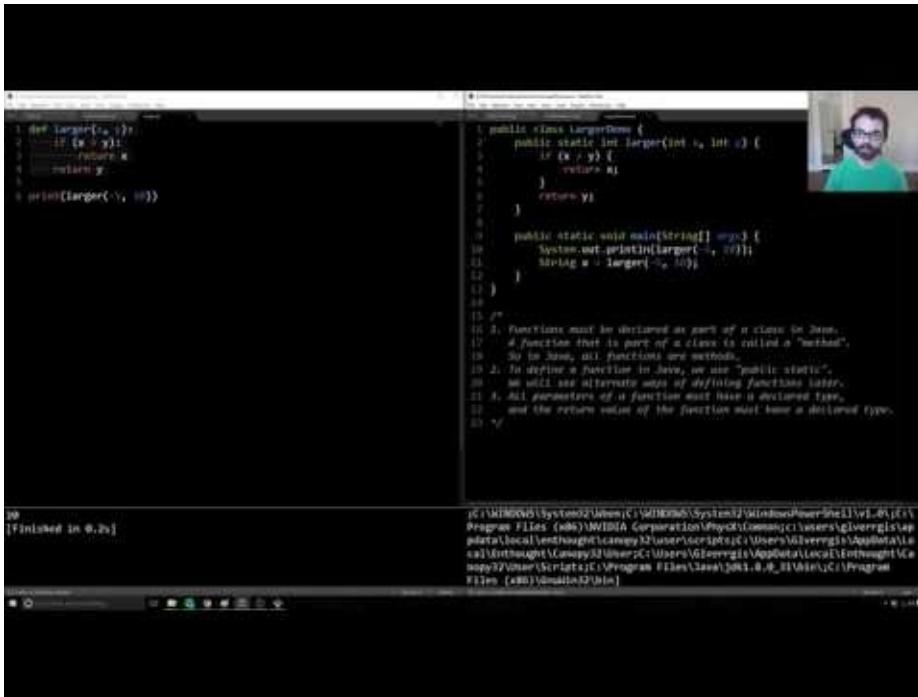
In this case, `System.out.println(5 + "horse");`, Java interprets the arguments as a string concatenation, and prints out "5horse" as your result. Or, more usefully,

`System.out.println(5 + " ");` will print a space after your "5".

What does `System.out.println(5 + "10");` print? 510, or 15? How about

`System.out.println(5 + 10);` ?

Defining Functions in Java



[Video link](#)

In languages like Python, functions can be declared anywhere, even outside of functions. For example, the code below declares a function that returns the larger of two arguments, and then uses this function to compute and print the larger of the numbers 8 and 10:

```
def larger(x, y):
    if x > y:
        return x
    return y

print(larger(8, 10))
```

Since all Java code is part of a class, we must define functions so that they belong to some class. Functions that are part of a class are commonly called "methods". We will use the terms interchangeably throughout the course. The equivalent Java program to the code above is as follows:

```

public class LargerDemo {
    public static int larger(int x, int y) {
        if (x > y) {
            return x;
        }
        return y;
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        System.out.println(larger(8, 10));
    }
}

```

The new piece of syntax here is that we declared our method using the keywords `public` `static`, which is a very rough analog of Python's `def` keyword. We will see alternate ways to declare methods in the next chapter.

The Java code given here certainly seems much more verbose! You might think that this sort of programming language will slow you down, and indeed it will, in the short term. Think of all of this stuff as safety equipment that we don't yet understand. When we're building small programs, it all seems superfluous. However, when we get to building large programs, we'll grow to appreciate all of the added complexity.

As an analogy, programming in Python can be a bit like [Dan Osman free-soloing Lover's Leap](#). It can be very fast, but dangerous. Java, by contrast is more like using ropes, helmets, etc. as in [this video](#).

Code Style, Comments, Javadoc

Code can be beautiful in many ways. It can be concise. It can be clever. It can be efficient. One of the least appreciated aspects of code by novices is code style. When you program as a novice, you are often single mindedly intent on getting it to work, without regard to ever looking at it again or having to maintain it over a long period of time.

In this course, we'll work hard to try to keep our code readable. Some of the most important features of good coding style are:

- Consistent style (spacing, variable naming, brace style, etc)
- Size (lines that are not too wide, source files that are not too long)
- Descriptive naming (variables, functions, classes), e.g. variables or functions with names like `year` or `getUserName` instead of `x` or `f`.
- Avoidance of repetitive code: You should almost never have two significant blocks of code that are nearly identical except for a few changes.
- Comments where appropriate. Line comments in Java use the `//` delimiter. Block

(a.k.a. multi-line comments) comments use `/*` and `*/`.

The golden rule is this: Write your code so that it is easy for a stranger to understand.

Often, we are willing to incur slight performance penalties, just so that our code is simpler to [grok](#). We will highlight examples in later chapters.

Comments

We encourage you to write code that is self-documenting, i.e. by picking variable names and function names that make it easy to know exactly what's going on. However, this is not always enough. For example, if you are implementing a complex algorithm, you may need to add comments to describe your code. Your use of comments should be judicious. Through experience and exposure to others' code, you will get a feeling for when comments are most appropriate.

One special note is that all of your methods and almost all of your classes should be described in a comment using the so-called [Javadoc](#) format. In a Javadoc comment, the block comment starts with an extra asterisk, e.g. `/**`, and the comment often (but not always) contains descriptive tags. We won't discuss these tags in this textbook, but see the link above for a description of how they work.

As an example without tags:

```
public class LargerDemo {  
    /** Returns the larger of x and y. */  
    public static int larger(int x, int y) {  
        if (x > y) {  
            return x;  
        }  
        return y;  
    }  
  
    public static void main(String[] args) {  
        System.out.println(larger(8, 10));  
    }  
}
```

The widely used [javadoc tool](#) can be used to generate HTML descriptions of your code. We'll see examples in a later chapter.

What Next

At the end of each chapter, there will be links letting you know what exercises (if any) you can complete with the material covered so far, listed in the order that you should complete them.

- [Homework 0](#)
- [Lab 1b](#)
- [Lab 1](#)
- [Discussion 1](#)

Defining and Using Classes

If you do not have prior Java experience, we recommend that you work through the exercises in [HWO](#) before reading this chapter. It will cover various syntax issues that we will not discuss in the book.

Static vs. Non-Static Methods

Static Methods



[Video link](#)

All code in Java must be part of a class (or something similar to a class, which we'll learn about later). Most code is written inside of methods. Let's consider an example:

```
public class Dog {  
    public static void makeNoise() {  
        System.out.println("Bark!");  
    }  
}
```

If we try running the `Dog` class, we'll simply get an error message:

```
$ java Dog
Error: Main method not found in class Dog, please define the main method as:
    public static void main(String[] args)
```

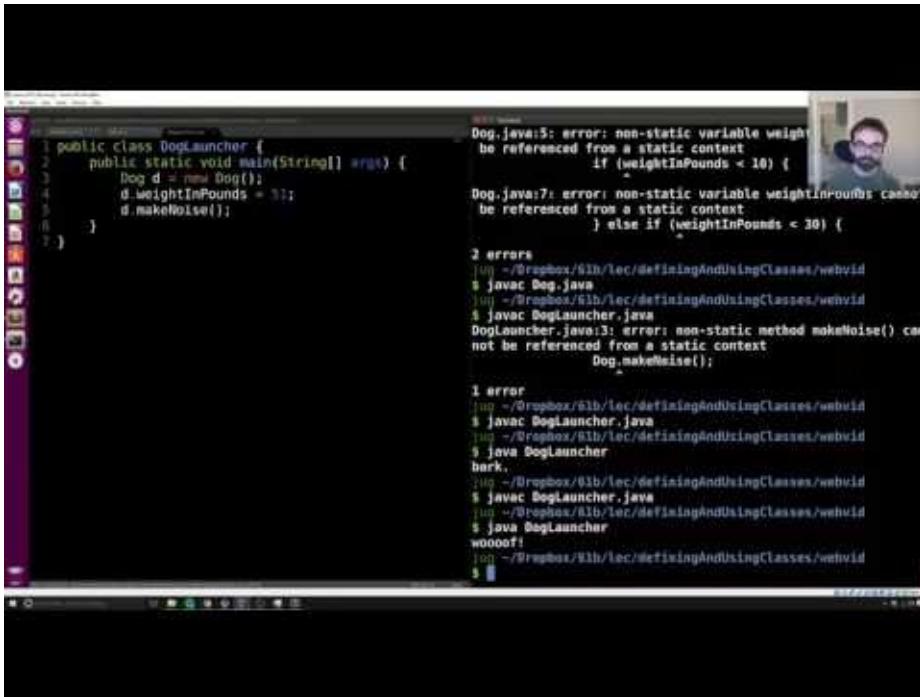
The `Dog` class we've defined doesn't do anything. We've simply defined something that `Dog` can do, namely make noise. To actually run the class, we'd either need to add a main method to the `Dog` class, as we saw in chapter 1.1. Or we could create a separate `DogLauncher` class that runs methods from the `Dog` class. For example, consider the program below:

```
public class DogLauncher {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Dog.makeNoise();
    }
}
```

```
$ java DogLauncher
Bark!
```

A class that uses another class is sometimes called a "client" of that class, i.e. `DogLauncher` is a client of `Dog`. Neither of the two techniques is better: Adding a main method to `Dog` may be better in some situations, and creating a client class like `DogLauncher` may be better in others. The relative advantages of each approach will become clear as we gain additional practice throughout the course.

Instance Variables and Object Instantiation



Video link

Not all dogs are alike. Some dogs like to yap incessantly, while others bellow sonorously, bringing joy to all who hear their glorious call. Often, we write programs to mimic features of the universe we inhabit, and Java's syntax was crafted to easily allow such mimicry.

One approach to allowing us to represent the spectrum of Dogdom would be to create separate classes for each type of Dog.

```
public class TinyDog {  
    public static void makeNoise() {  
        System.out.println("yip yip yip yip");  
    }  
}  
  
public class MalamuteDog {  
    public static void makeNoise() {  
        System.out.println("arooooooooooooooo!");  
    }  
}
```

As you should have seen in the past, classes can be instantiated, and instances can hold data. This leads to a more natural approach, where we create instances of the `Dog` class and make the behavior of the `Dog` methods contingent upon the properties of the specific `Dog`. To make this more concrete, consider the class below:

```

public class Dog {
    public int weightInPounds;

    public void makeNoise() {
        if (weightInPounds < 10) {
            System.out.println("yipyipyip!");
        } else if (weightInPounds < 30) {
            System.out.println("bark. bark.");
        } else {
            System.out.println("woof!");
        }
    }
}

```

As an example of using such a Dog, consider:

```

public class DogLauncher {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Dog d;
        d = new Dog();
        d.weightInPounds = 20;
        d.makeNoise();
    }
}

```

When run, this program will create a `Dog` with weight 20, and that `Dog` will soon let out a nice "bark. bark.".

Some key observations and terminology:

- An `object` in Java is an instance of any class.
- The `Dog` class has its own variables, also known as *instance variables* or *non-static variables*. These must be declared inside the class, unlike languages like Python or Matlab, where new variables can be added at runtime.
- The method that we created in the `Dog` class did not have the `static` keyword. We call such methods *instance methods* or *non-static methods*.
- To call the `makeNoise` method, we had to first *instantiate* a `Dog` using the `new` keyword, and then make a specific `Dog` bark. In other words, we called `d.makeNoise()` instead of `Dog.makeNoise()`.
- Once an object has been instantiated, it can be *assigned* to a *declared* variable of the appropriate type, e.g. `d = new Dog();`
- Variables and methods of a class are also called *members* of a class.
- Members of a class are accessed using *dot notation*.

Constructors in Java

As you've hopefully seen before, we usually construct objects in object oriented languages using a *constructor*:

```
public class DogLauncher {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Dog d = new Dog(20);
        d.makeNoise();
    }
}
```

Here, the instantiation is parameterized, saving us the time and messiness of manually typing out potentially many instance variable assignments. To enable such syntax, we need only add a "constructor" to our Dog class, as shown below:

```
public class Dog {
    public int weightInPounds;

    public Dog(int w) {
        weightInPounds = w;
    }

    public void makeNoise() {
        if (weightInPounds < 10) {
            System.out.println("yipyipyip!");
        } else if (weightInPounds < 30) {
            System.out.println("bark. bark.");
        } else {
            System.out.println("woof!");
        }
    }
}
```

The constructor with signature `public Dog(int w)` will be invoked anytime that we try to create a `Dog` using the `new` keyword and a single integer parameter. For those of you coming from Python, the constructor is very similar to the `__init__` method.

Terminology Summary

Instantiating a Class and Terminology



The dot notation is used to access a method or variable belonging to hugeDog, or more succinctly, a *member* of hugeDog.

[Video link](#)

Array Instantiation, Arrays of Objects

Arrays of Objects (assuming you've done HW0!)



To create an array of objects:

- First use the new keyword to create the array.
- Then use new again for each object that you want to put in the array.

Example:

```
Dog[] dogs = new Dog[2];
dogs[0] = new Dog(8);
dogs[1] = new Dog(20);
dogs[0].makeNoise();
```

Creates an array of Dogs of size 2.
Yipping occurs.

After code runs:

dogs =	Dog of size 8	Dog of size 20
	0	1

[Video link](#)

As we saw in HW0, arrays are also instantiated in Java using the new keyword. For example:

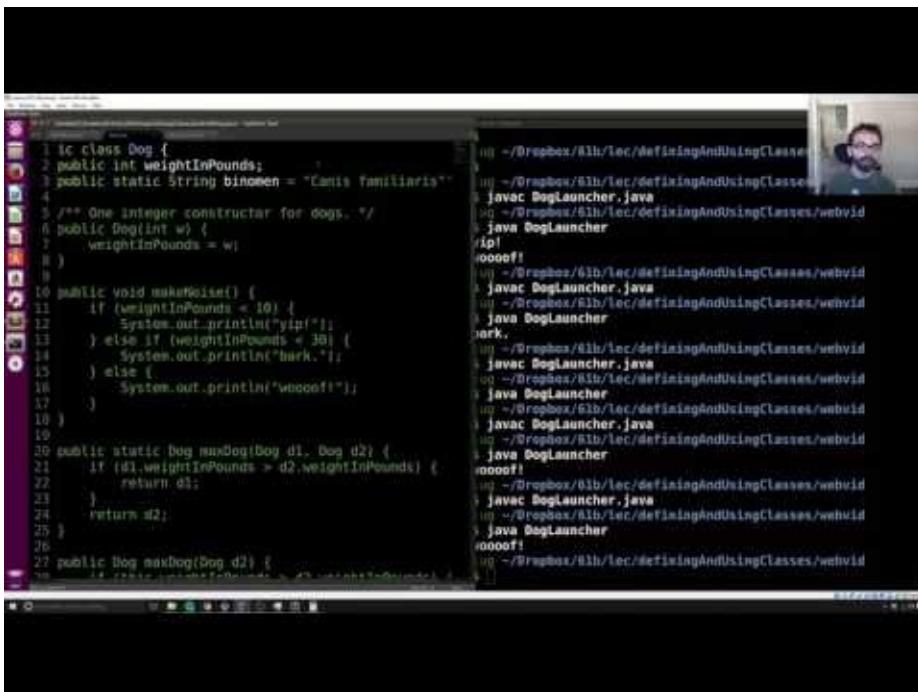
```
public class ArrayDemo {  
    public static void main(String[] args) {  
        /* Create an array of five integers. */  
        int[] someArray = new int[5];  
        someArray[0] = 3;  
        someArray[1] = 4;  
    }  
}
```

Similarly, we can create arrays of instantiated objects in Java, e.g.

```
public class DogArrayDemo {  
    public static void main(String[] args) {  
        /* Create an array of two dogs. */  
        Dog[] dogs = new Dog[2];  
        dogs[0] = new Dog(8);  
        dogs[1] = new Dog(20);  
  
        /* Yipping will result, since dogs[0] has weight 8. */  
        dogs[0].makeNoise();  
    }  
}
```

Observe that new is used in two different ways: Once to create an array that can hold two `Dog` objects, and twice to create each actual `Dog`.

Class Methods vs. Instance Methods



[Video link](#)

Java allows us to define two types of methods:

- Class methods, a.k.a. static methods.
- Instance methods, a.k.a. non-static methods.

Instance methods are actions that can be taken only by a specific instance of a class. Static methods are actions that are taken by the class itself. Both are useful in different circumstances. As an example of a static method, the `Math` class provides a `sqrt` method. Because it is static, we can call it as follows:

```
x = Math.sqrt(100);
```

If `sqrt` had been an instance method, we would have instead the awkward syntax below. Luckily `sqrt` is a static method so we don't have to do this in real programs.

```
Math m = new Math();
x = m.sqrt(100);
```

Sometimes, it makes sense to have a class with both instance and static methods. For example, suppose want the ability to compare two dogs. One way to do this is to add a static method for comparing Dogs.

```
public static Dog maxDog(Dog d1, Dog d2) {
    if (d1.weightInPounds > d2.weightInPounds) {
        return d1;
    }
    return d2;
}
```

This method could be invoked by, for example:

```
Dog d = new Dog(15);
Dog d2 = new Dog(100);
Dog.maxDog(d, d2);
```

Observe that we've invoked using the class name, since this method is a static method.

We could also have implemented `maxDog` as a non-static method, e.g.

```
public Dog maxDog(Dog d2) {
    if (this.weightInPounds > d2.weightInPounds) {
        return this;
    }
    return d2;
}
```

Above, we use the keyword `this` to refer to the current object. This method could be invoked, for example, with:

```
Dog d = new Dog(15);
Dog d2 = new Dog(100);
d.maxDog(d2);
```

Here, we invoke the method using a specific instance variable.

Exercise 1.2.1: What would the following method do? If you're not sure, try it out.

```
public static Dog maxDog(Dog d1, Dog d2) {
    if (weightInPounds > d2.weightInPounds) {
        return this;
    }
    return d2;
}
```

Static Variables

It is occasionally useful for classes to have static variables. These are properties inherent to the class itself, rather than the instance. For example, we might record that the scientific name (or binomen) for Dogs is "Canis familiaris":

```
public class Dog {
    public int weightInPounds;
    public static String binomen = "Canis familiaris";
    ...
}
```

Static variables should be accessed using the name of the class rather than a specific instance, e.g. you should use `Dog.binomen`, not `d.binomen`.

While Java technically allows you to access a static variable using an instance name, it is bad style, confusing, and in my opinion an error by the Java designers.

Exercise 1.2.2: Complete this exercise:

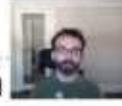
- Video: [link](#)
- Slide: [link](#)
- Solution Video: [link](#)

public static void main(String[] args)



ArgsSum Exercise

Goal: Create a program ArgsSum that prints out the sum of the command arguments, assuming they are numbers.



- Search eng...



[Video link](#)

With what we've learned so far, it's time to demystify the declaration we've been using for the main method. Breaking it into pieces, we have:

- `public` : So far, all of our methods start with this keyword.
- `static` : It is a static method, not associated with any particular instance.
- `void` : It has no return type.
- `main` : This is the name of the method.
- `String[] args` : This is a parameter that is passed to the main method.

Command Line Arguments

Since `main` is called by the Java interpreter itself rather than another Java class, it is the interpreter's job to supply these arguments. They refer usually to the command line arguments. For example, consider the program `ArgsDemo` below:

```
public class ArgsDemo {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        System.out.println(args[0]);
    }
}
```

This program prints out the 0th command line argument, e.g.

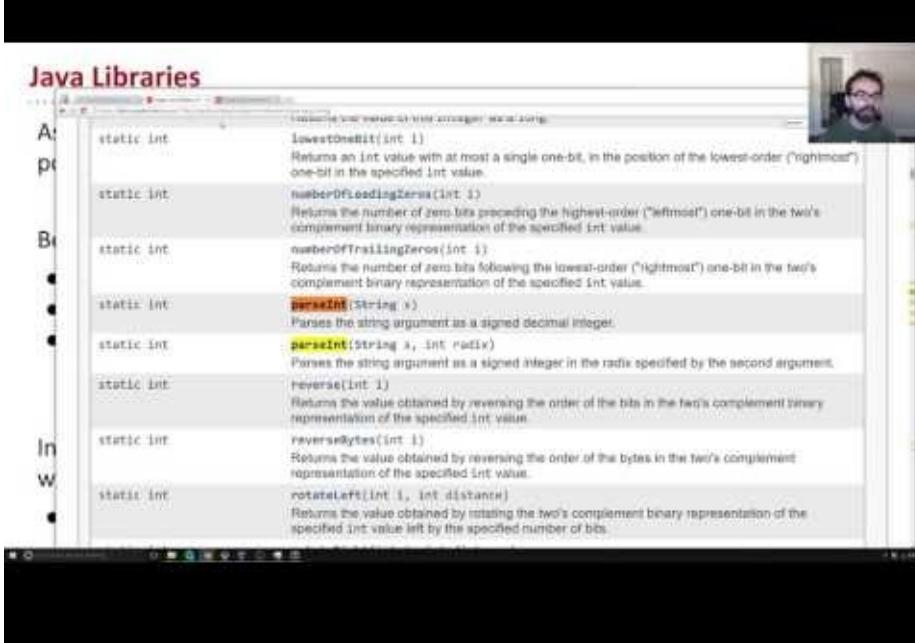
```
$ java ArgsDemo these are command line arguments
these
```

In the example above, `args` will be an array of Strings, where the entries are {"these", "are", "command", "line", "arguments"}.

Summing Command Line Arguments

Exercise 1.2.3: Try to write a program that sums up the command line arguments, assuming they are numbers. For a solution, see the webcast or the code provided on GitHub.

Using Libraries



[Video link](#)

One of the most important skills as a programmer is knowing how to find and use existing libraries. In the glorious modern era, it is often possible to save yourself tons of work and debugging by turning to the web for help.

In this course, you're welcome to do this, with the following caveats:

- Do not use libraries that we do not provide.
- Cite your sources.
- Do not search for solutions for specific homework or project problems.

For example, it's fine to search for "convert String integer Java". However, it is not OK to search for "nbody project berkeley".

For more on collaboration and academic honesty policy, see the course syllabus.

What Next

- [Project 0](#)
- [Discussion 2](#)

2. Lists

Lists

In Project 0, we use arrays to track the positions of N objects in space. One thing we would not have been able to easily do is change the number of objects after the simulation had begun. This is because arrays have a fixed size in Java that can never change.

An alternate approach would have been to use a list type. You've no doubt used a list data structure at some point in the past. For example, in Python:

```
L = [3, 5, 6]
L.append(7)
```

While Java does have a built-in List type, we're going to eschew using it for now. In this chapter, we'll build our own list from scratch, along the way learning some key features of Java.

The Mystery of the Walrus

Variables in Java: PollEv.com/jhug

```
Walrus a = new Walrus(1000, 8.3);
Walrus b;
b = a;
b.weight = 5;
System.out.println(a);
System.out.println(b);
```

Will the change to b affect a?

A. Yes
B. No

```
weight: 5, tusk size: 8.30
weight: 5, tusk size: 8.30
```

Answer: [Visualizer](#)

[Video link](#)

To begin our journey, we will first ponder the profound Mystery of the Walrus.

Try to predict what happens when we run the code below. Does the change to b affect a?

Hint: If you're coming from Python, Java has the same behavior.

```
Walrus a = new Walrus(1000, 8.3);
Walrus b;
b = a;
b.weight = 5;
System.out.println(a);
System.out.println(b);
```

Now try to predict what happens when we run the code below. Does the change to x affect y?

```
int x = 5;
int y;
y = x;
x = 2;
System.out.println("x is: " + x);
System.out.println("y is: " + y);
```

The answer can be found [here](#).

While subtle, the key ideas that underlie the Mystery of the Walrus will be incredibly important to the efficiency of the data structures that we'll implement in this course, and a deep understanding of this problem will also lead to safer, more reliable code.

Bits



Declaring a Variable (Simplified)



When you declare a variable of a certain type in Java:

- Your computer sets aside exactly enough bits to hold a thing of that type.
 - Example: Declaring an int sets aside a “box” of 32 bits.
 - Example: Declaring a double sets aside a box of 64 bits.
- Java creates an internal table that maps each variable name to a location.
- Java does NOT write anything into the reserved boxes.
 - For safety, Java will not let access a variable that is uninitialized.



[Video link](#)

All information in your computer is stored in *memory* as a sequence of ones and zeros.

Some examples:

- 72 is often stored as 01001000
- 205.75 is often stored as 01000011 01001101 11000000 00000000
- The letter H is often stored as 01001000 (same as 72)
- The true value is often stored as 00000001

In this course, we won't spend much time talking about specific binary representations, e.g. why on earth 205.75 is stored as the seemingly random string of 32 bits above.

Understanding specific representations is a topic of [CS61C](#), the followup course to 61B.

Though we won't learn the language of binary, it's good to know that this is what is going on under the hood.

One interesting observation is that both 72 and H are stored as 01001000. This raises the question: how does a piece of Java code know how to interpret 01001000?

The answer is through types! For example, consider the code below:

```
char c = 'H';
int x = c;
System.out.println(c);
System.out.println(x);
```

If we run this code, we get:

```
H
72
```

In this case, both the x and c variables contain the same bits (well, almost...), but the Java interpreter treats them differently when printed.

In Java, there are 8 primitive types: byte, short, int, long, float, double, boolean, and char. Each has different properties that we'll discuss throughout the course, with the exception of short and float, which you'll likely never use.

Declaring a Variable (Simplified)

You can think of your computer as containing a vast number of memory bits for storing information, each of which has a unique address. Many billions of such bits are available to the modern computer.

When you declare a variable of a certain type, Java finds a contiguous block of exactly enough bits to hold a thing of that type. For example, if you declare an int, you get a block of 32 bits. If you declare a byte, you get a block of 8 bits. Each data type in Java holds a different number of bits. The exact number is not terribly important to us in this class.

For the sake of having a convenient metaphor, we'll call one of these blocks a "box" of bits.

In addition to setting aside memory, the Java interpreter also creates an entry in an internal table that maps each variable name to the location of the first bit in the box.

For example, if you declared `int x` and `double y`, then Java might decide to use bits 352 through 384 of your computer's memory to store x, and bits 20800 through 20864 to store y. The interpreter will then record that int x starts at bit 352 and y starts at bit 20800. For example, after executing the code:

```
int x;  
double y;
```

We'd end up with boxes of size 32 and 64 respectively, as shown in the figure below:



The Java language provides no way for you to know the location of the box, e.g. you can't somehow find out that x is in position 352. In other words, the exact memory address is below the level of abstraction accessible to us in Java. This is unlike languages like C where you can ask the language for the exact address of a piece of data. For this reason, I have omitted the addresses from the figure above.

This feature of Java is a tradeoff! Hiding memory locations from the programmer gives you less control, which prevents you from doing certain [types of optimizations](#). However, it also avoids a [large class of very tricky programming errors](#). In the modern era of very low cost computing, this tradeoff is usually well worth it. As the wise Donald Knuth once said: "We should forget about small efficiencies, say about 97% of the time: premature optimization is the root of all evil".

As an analogy, you do not have direct control over your heartbeat. While this restricts your ability to optimize for certain situations, it also avoids the possibility of making stupid errors like accidentally turning it off.

Java does not write anything into the reserved box when a variable is declared. In other words, there are no default values. As a result, the Java compiler prevents you from using a variable until after the box has been filled with bits using the `=` operator. For this reason, I have avoided showing any bits in the boxes in the figure above.

When you assign values to a memory box, it is filled with the bits you specify. For example, if we execute the lines:

```
x = -1431195969;  
y = 567213.112;
```

Then the memory boxes from above are filled as shown below, in what I call **box notation**.

x	1010101010110001101011101011111
y	01000001001000010100111101011000111001010110000001000001100010

The top bits represent -1431195969, and the bottom bits represent 567213.112. Why these specific sequences of bits represent these two numbers is not important, and is a topic covered in CS61C. However, if you're curious, see [integer representations](#) and [double representations](#) on wikipedia.

Note: Memory allocation is actually somewhat more complicated than described here, and is a topic of CS 61C. However, this model is close enough to reality for our purposes in 61B.

Simplified Box Notation

While the box notation we used in the previous section is great for understanding approximately what's going on under the hood, it's not useful for practical purposes since we don't know how to interpret the binary bits.

Thus, instead of writing memory box contents in binary, we'll write them in human readable symbols. We will do this throughout the rest of the course. For example, after executing:

```
int x;  
double y;  
x = -1431195969;  
y = 567213.112;
```

We can represent the program environment using what I call **simplified box notation**, shown below:

x -1431195969

y 567213.112

The Golden Rule of Equals (GRoE)

Now armed with simplified box notation, we can finally start to resolve the Mystery of the Walrus.

It turns out our Mystery has a simple solution: When you write `y = x`, you are telling the Java interpreter to copy the bits from x into y. This Golden Rule of Equals (GRoE) is the root of all truth when it comes to understanding our Walrus Mystery.

```
int x = 5;
int y;
y = x;
x = 2;
System.out.println("x is: " + x);
System.out.println("y is: " + y);
```

This simple idea of copying the bits is true for ANY assignment using `=` in Java. To see this in action, click [this link](#).

Reference Types

Above, we said that there are 8 primitive types: byte, short, int, long, float, double, boolean, char. Everything else, including arrays, is not a primitive type but rather a `reference type`.

Object Instantiation



Reference Type Variable Declarations



When we declare a variable of any reference type (Walrus, Dog, Planet):

- Java allocates exactly a box of size 64 bits, no matter what type of object.
 - These bits can be either set to:
 - Null (all zeros).
 - The 64 bit “address” of a specific instance of that class (returned by `new`).

```
Walrus someWalrus;  
someWalrus = null;
```

64 bits

```
Walrus someWalrus;  
someWalrus = new Walrus(1000, 8.3);
```

Walrus Instance	
96 bits	weight 1000
11111	tuskSize 8.3



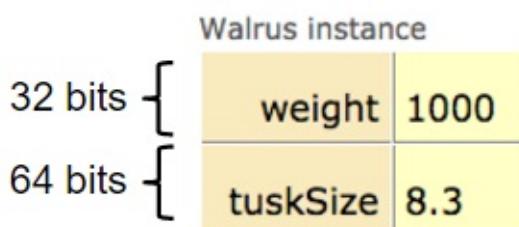
Video link

When we *instantiate* an Object using `new` (e.g. Dog, Walrus, Planet), Java first allocates a box for each instance variable of the class, and fills them with a default value. The constructor then usually (but not always) fills every box with some other value.

For example, if our Walrus class is:

```
public static class Walrus {  
    public int weight;  
    public double tuskSize;  
  
    public Walrus(int w, double ts) {  
        weight = w;  
        tuskSize = ts;  
    }  
}
```

And we create a Walrus using `new Walrus(1000, 8.3);`, then we end up with a Walrus consisting of two boxes of 32 and 64 bits respectively:



In real implementations of the Java programming language, there is actually some additional overhead for any object, so a Walrus takes somewhat more than 96 bits. However, for our purposes, we will ignore such overhead, since we will never interact with it directly.

The Walrus we've created is anonymous, in the sense that it has been created, but it is not stored in any variable. Let's now turn to variables that store objects.

Reference Variable Declaration

When we *declare* a variable of any reference type (Walrus, Dog, Planet, array, etc.), Java allocates a box of 64 bits, no matter what type of object.

At first glance, this might seem to lead to a Walrus Paradox. Our Walrus from the previous section required more than 64 bits to store. Furthermore, it may seem bizarre that no matter the type of object, we only get 64 bits to store it.

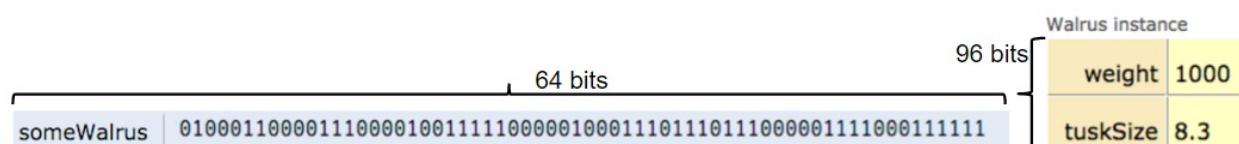
However, this problem is easily resolved with the following piece of information: the 64 bit box contains not the data about the walrus, but instead the address of the Walrus in memory.

As an example, suppose we call:

```
Walrus someWalrus;
someWalrus = new Walrus(1000, 8.3);
```

The first line creates a box of 64 bits. The second line creates a new Walrus, and the address is returned by the `new` operator. These bits are then copied into the `someWalrus` box according to the GRoE.

If we imagine our Walrus weight is stored starting at bit `5051956592385990207` of memory, and tuskSize starts at bit `5051956592385990239`, we might store `5051956592385990207` in the Walrus variable. In binary, `5051956592385990207` is represented by the 64 bits `010001100001110000100111100000100011101110111000001111000111111`, giving us in box notation:



We can also assign the special value `null` to a reference variable, corresponding to all zeros.

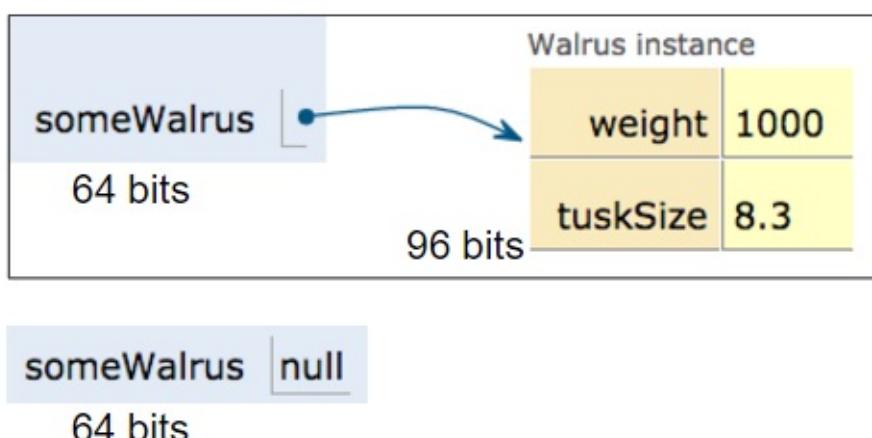
Box and Pointer Notation

Just as before, it's hard to interpret a bunch of bits inside a reference variable, so we'll create a simplified box notation for reference variable as follows:

- If an address is all zeros, we will represent it with null.
 - A non-zero address will be represented by an arrow pointing at an object instantiation.

This is also sometimes called "box and pointer" notation.

For the examples from the previous section, we'd have:

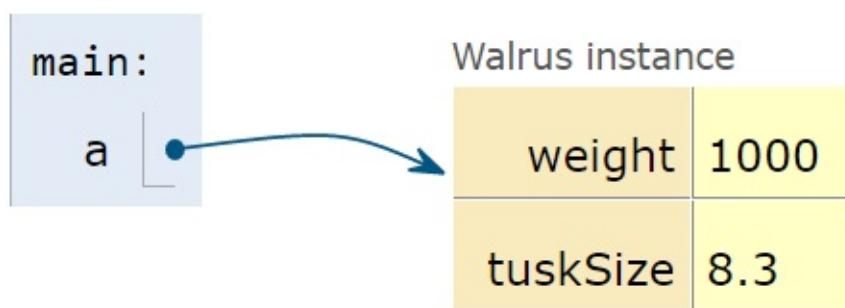


Resolving the Mystery of the Walrus

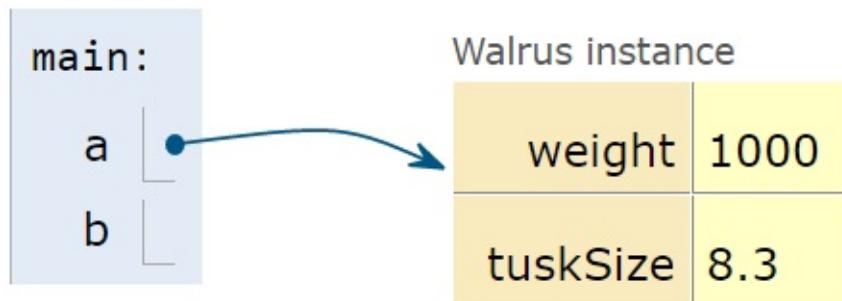
We're now finally ready to resolve, fully and completely, the Mystery of the Walrus.

```
Walrus a = new Walrus(1000, 8.3);
Walrus b;
b = a;
```

After the first line is executed, we have:

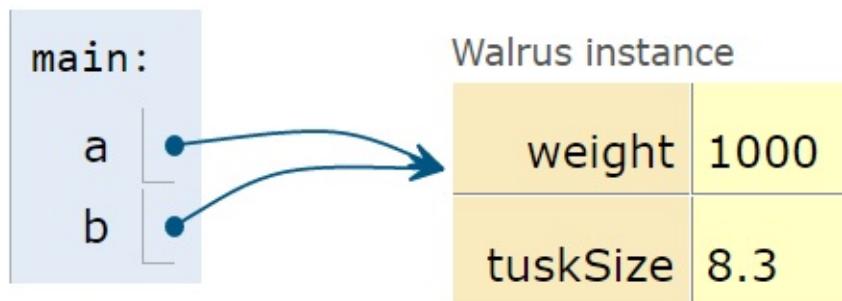


After the second line is executed, we have:



Note that above, b is undefined, not null.

According to the GRoE, the final line simply copies the bits in the `a` box into the `b` box. Or in terms of our visual metaphor, this means that b will copy exactly the arrow in a and now show an arrow pointing at the same object.



And that's it. There's no more complexity than this.

Parameter Passing

The Golden Rule of Equals (and Parameter Passing)

Given variables b and a:

- `b = a` copies all the bits from a into b.



Passing parameters obeys the same rule: Simply copy the bits to the new scope.

```
public static double average(double a, double b) {
    return (a + b) / 2;
}

public static void main(String[] args) {
    double x = 5.5;
    double y = 10.5;
    double avg = average(x, y);
}
```

average	
a	5.5
b	10.5

main	
x	5.5
y	10.5

[Video link](#)

When you pass parameters to a function, you are also simply copying the bits. In other words, the GRoE also applies to parameter passing. Copying the bits is usually called "pass by value". In Java, we **always** pass by value.

For example, consider the function below:

```
public static double average(double a, double b) {  
    return (a + b) / 2;  
}
```

Suppose we invoke this function as shown below:

```
public static void main(String[] args) {  
    double x = 5.5;  
    double y = 10.5;  
    double avg = average(x, y);  
}
```

After executing the first two lines of this function, the main method will have two boxes labeled `x` and `y` containing the values shown below:

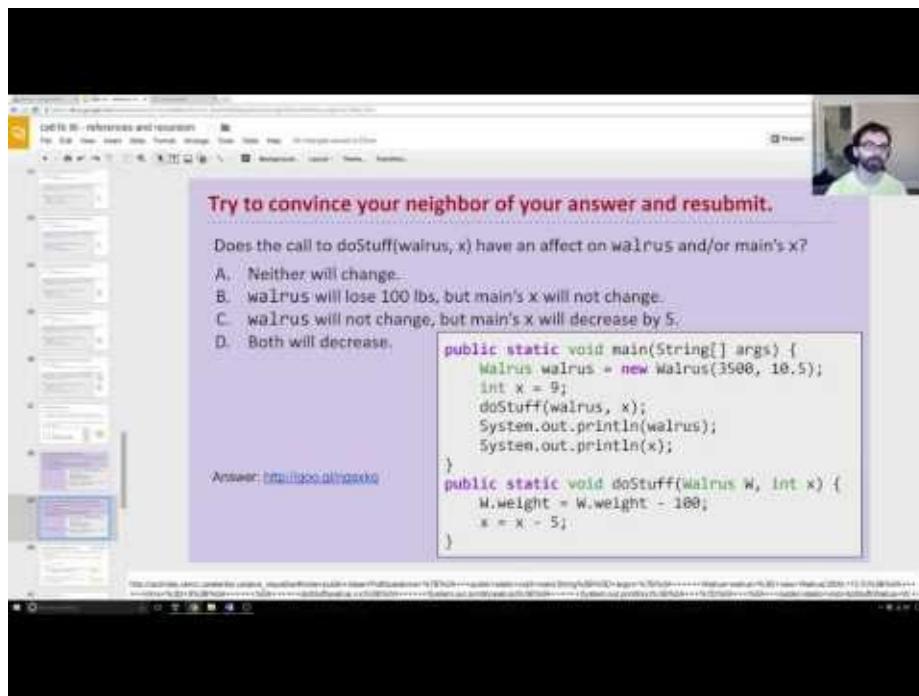
main
x 5.5
y 10.5

When the function is invoked, the `average` function has its own scope with two new boxes labeled as `a` and `b`, and the bits are simply copied in.

average
a 5.5
b 10.5

If the `average` function were to change `a`, then `x` in main would be unchanged, since the GRoE tells us that we'd simply be filling in the box labeled `a` with new bits.

Test Your Understanding



[Video link](#)

Exercise 2.1.1: Suppose we have the code below:

```
public class PassByValueFigure {  
    public static void main(String[] args) {  
        Walrus walrus = new Walrus(3500, 10.5);  
        int x = 9;  
  
        doStuff(walrus, x);  
        System.out.println(walrus);  
        System.out.println(x);  
    }  
  
    public static void doStuff(Walrus W, int x) {  
        W.weight = W.weight - 100;  
        x = x - 5;  
    }  
}
```

Does the call to `doStuff` have an effect on `walrus` and/or `x`? Hint: We only need to know the GRoE to solve this problem.

Instantiation of Arrays

Declaration and Instantiation of Arrays



Arrays are also Objects. As we've seen, objects are (usually) instantiated using the `new` keyword.

- `Planet p = new Planet(0, 0, 0, 0, 0, "blah.png");`
- `int[] x = new int[]{0, 1, 2, 95, 4};`

`int[] a;` Declaration

- Declaration creates a 64 bit box intended only for storing a reference to an `int` array. **No object is instantiated.**

`a` Instantiation (HW0 covers this syntax)

`new int[]{0, 1, 2, 95, 4};` Instantiation (HW0 covers this syntax)

- Instantiates a new Object, in this case an `int` array.
- Object is anonymous!

`array` array

0	1	2	3	95	4
---	---	---	---	----	---

[Video link](#)

As mentioned above, variables that store arrays are reference variables just like any other. As an example, consider the declarations below:

```
int[] x;
Planet[] planets;
```

Both of these declarations create memory boxes of 64 bits. `x` can only hold the address of an `int` array, and `planets` can only hold the address of a `Planet` array.

Instantiating an array is very similar to instantiating an object. For example, if we create an integer array of size 5 as shown below:

```
x = new int[]{0, 1, 2, 95, 4};
```

Then the `new` keyword creates 5 boxes of 32 bits each and returns the address of the overall object for assignment to `x`.

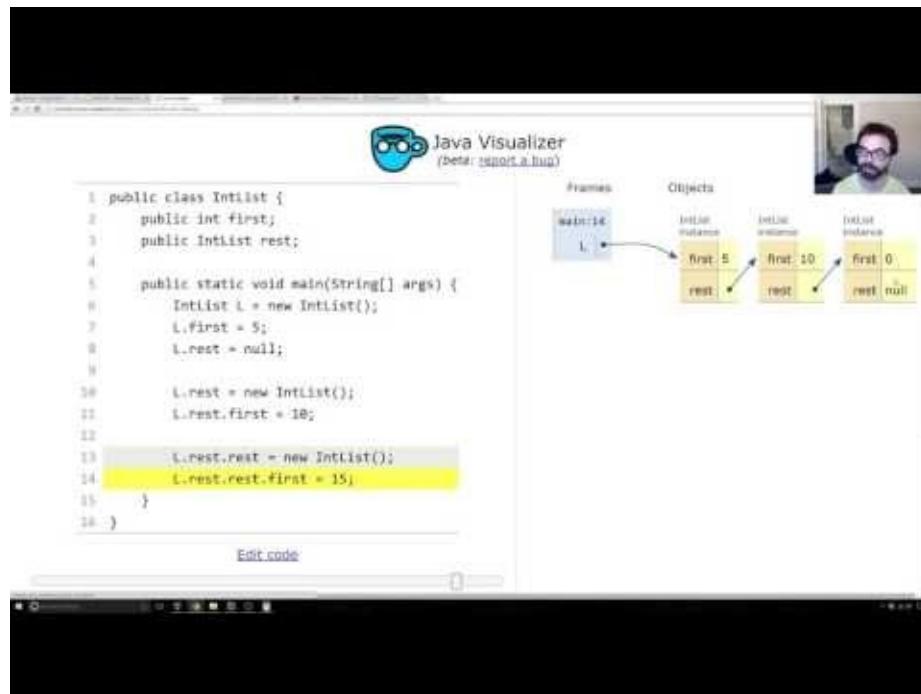
Objects can be lost if you lose the bits corresponding to the address. For example if the only copy of the address of a particular Walrus is stored in `x`, then `x = null` will cause you to permanently lose this Walrus. This isn't necessarily a bad thing, since you'll often decide you're done with an object, and thus it's safe to simply throw away the reference. We'll see this when we build lists later in this chapter.

The Law of the Broken Futon

You might ask yourself why we spent so much time and space covering what seems like a triviality. This is probably especially true if you have prior Java experience. The reason is that it is very easy for a student to have a half-cocked understanding of this issue, allowing them to write code, but without true comprehension of what's going on.

While this might be fine in the short term, in the long term, doing problems without full understanding may doom you to failure later down the line. There's a blog post about this so-called [Law of the Broken Futon](#) that you might find interesting.

IntLists



[Video link](#)

Now that we've truly understood the Mystery of the Walrus, we're ready to build our own list class.

It turns out that a very basic list is trivial to implement, as shown below:

```
public class IntList {
    public int first;
    public IntList rest;

    public IntList(int f, IntList r) {
        first = f;
        rest = r;
    }
}
```

You may remember something like this from 61a called a "Linked List".

Such a list is ugly to use. For example, if we want to make a list of the numbers 5, 10, and 15, we can either do:

```
IntList L = new IntList(5, null);
L.rest = new IntList(10, null);
L.rest.rest = new IntList(15, null);
```

Alternately, we could build our list backwards, yielding slightly nicer but harder to understand code:

```
IntList L = new IntList(15, null);
L = new IntList(10, L);
L = new IntList(5, L);
```

While you could in principle use the `IntList` to store any list of integers, the resulting code would be rather ugly and prone to errors. We'll adopt the usual object oriented programming strategy of adding helper methods to our class to perform basic tasks.

size and iterativeSize

We'd like to add a method `size` to the `IntList` class so that if you call `L.size()`, you get back the number of items in `L`.

Consider writing a `size` and `iterativeSize` method before reading the rest of this chapter. `size` should use recursion, and `iterativeSize` should not. You'll probably learn more by trying on your own before seeing how I do it. The two videos provide a live demonstration of how one might implement these methods.

2.1 Mystery of the Walrus



```
4
5     public IntList(int f, IntList r) {
6         first = f;
7         rest = r;
8     }
9
10    /** Return the size of the list using... recursion! */
11    public int size() {
12        if (rest == null) {
13            return 1;
14        }
15        return 1 + this.rest.size();
16    }
17
18    public static void main(String[] args) {
19        IntList L = new IntList(15, null);
20        L = new IntList(18, L);
21        L = new IntList(5, L);
22    }
23
[Finished in 1.0s]
```

Video link

```
10  /** Return the size of the list using... recursion! */
11  public int size() {
12      if (rest == null) {
13          return 1;
14      }
15      return 1 + this.rest.size();
16  }
17
18  /** Return the size of the list using no recursion! */
19  public int iterativeSize() {
20      IntList p = this;
21      int totalSize = 0;
22      while (p != null) {
23          totalSize += 1;
24          p = p.rest;
25      }
26  }
27 }
```

Video link

My `size` method is as shown below:

```
/** Return the size of the list using... recursion! */
public int size() {
    if (rest == null) {
        return 1;
    }
    return 1 + this.rest.size();
}
```

The key thing to remember about recursive code is that you need a base case. In this situation, the most reasonable base case is that rest is `null`, which results in a size 1 list.

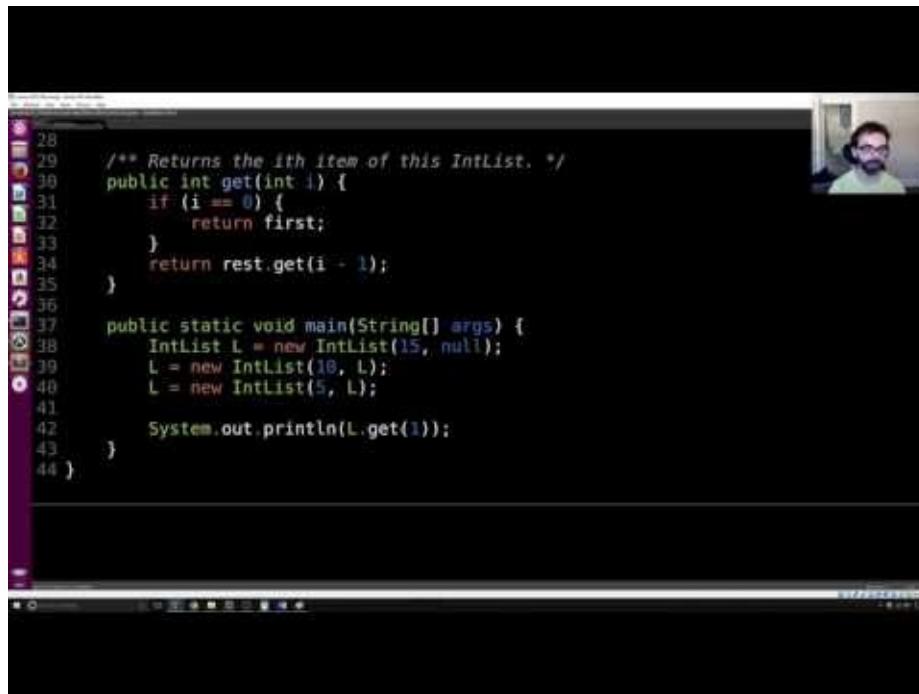
Exercise: You might wonder why we don't do something like `if (this == null) return 0;`. Why wouldn't this work?

Answer: Think about what happens when you call `size`. You are calling it on an object, for example `L.size()`. If `L` were `null`, then you would get a `NullPointerException`!

My `iterativeSize` method is as shown below. I recommend that when you write iterative data structure code that you use the name `p` to remind yourself that the variable is holding a pointer. You need that pointer because you can't reassign "this" in Java. The followups in [this Stack Overflow Post](#) offer a brief explanation as to why.

```
/** Return the size of the list using no recursion! */
public int iterativeSize() {
    IntList p = this;
    int totalSize = 0;
    while (p != null) {
        totalSize += 1;
        p = p.rest;
    }
    return totalSize;
}
```

get



[Video link](#)

While the `size` method lets us get the size of a list, we have no easy way of getting the *i*th element of the list.

Exercise: Write a method `get(int i)` that returns the *i*th item of the list. For example, if `L` is `5 -> 10 -> 15`, then `L.get(0)` should return `5`, `L.get(1)` should return `10`, and `L.get(2)` should return `15`. It doesn't matter how your code behaves for invalid `i`, either too big or too small.

For a solution, see the lecture video above or the `lectureCode` repository.

Note that the method we've written takes linear time! That is, if you have a list that is 1,000,000 items long, then getting the last item is going to take much longer than it would if we had a small list. We'll see an alternate way to implement a list that will avoid this problem in a future lecture.

What Next

- [Lab setup](#)
- [Lab 2](#)

SLLists

In Chapter 2.1, we built the `IntList` class, a list data structure that can technically do all the things a list can do. However, in practice, the `IntList` suffers from the fact that it is fairly awkward to use, resulting in code that is hard to read and maintain.

Fundamentally, the issue is that the `IntList` is what I call a **naked recursive** data structure. In order to use an `IntList` correctly, the programmer must understand and utilize recursion even for simple list related tasks. This limits its usefulness to novice programmers, and potentially introduces a whole new class of tricky errors that programmers might run into, depending on what sort of helper methods are provided by the `IntList` class.

Inspired by our experience with the `IntList`, we'll now build a new class `SLList`, which much more closely resembles the list implementations that programmers use in modern languages. We'll do so by iteratively adding a sequence of improvements.

Improvement #1: Rebranding

Last Time in 61B: Recursive Implementation of a List

```
public class IntList {
    public int first;
    public IntList rest;

    public IntList(int first, IntList rest) {
        this.first = first;
        this.rest = rest;
    }
}
```

While functional, “naked” linked lists like the one above are hard to use.

- Users of this class are probably going to need to know references very well, and be able to think recursively. Let’s make our users’ lives easier.

[Video link](#)

Our `IntList` class from last time was as follows, with helper methods omitted:

```

public class IntList {
    public int first;
    public IntList rest;

    public IntList(int f, IntList r) {
        first = f;
        rest = r;
    }
    ...
}

```

Our first step will be to simply rename everything and throw away the helper methods. This probably doesn't seem like progress, but trust me, I'm a professional.

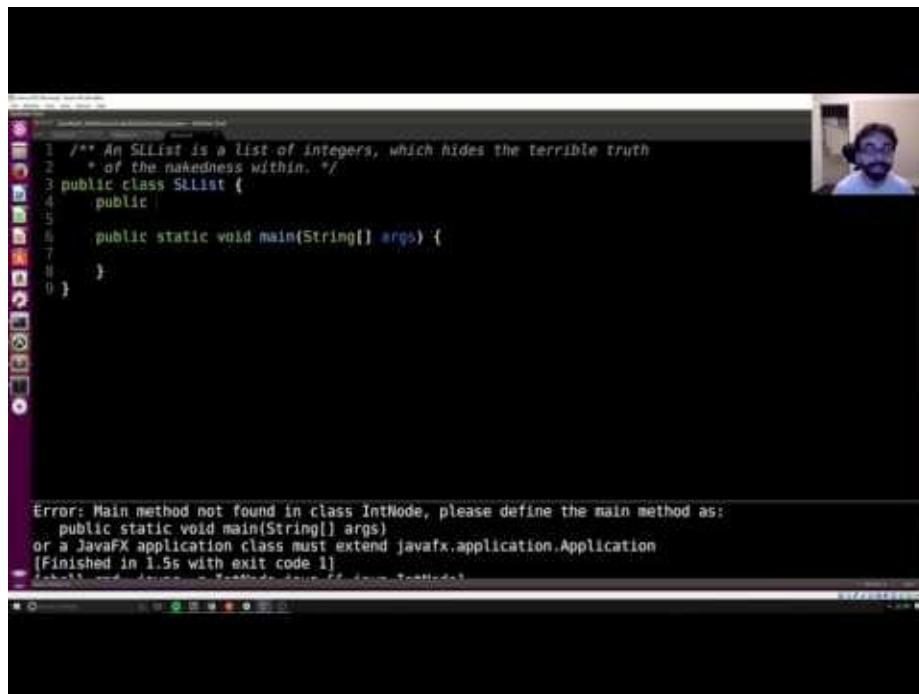
```

public class IntNode {
    public int item;
    public IntNode next;

    public IntNode(int i, IntNode n) {
        item = i;
        next = n;
    }
}

```

Improvement #2: Bureaucracy



[Video link](#)

Knowing that `IntNodes` are hard to work with, we're going to create a separate class called `SLLList` that the user will interact with. The basic class is simply:

```

public class SLLList {
    public IntNode first;

    public SLLList(int x) {
        first = new IntNode(x, null);
    }
}

```

Already, we can get a vague sense of why a `SLLList` is better. Compare the creation of an `IntList` of one item to the creation of a `SLLList` of one item.

```

IntList L1 = new IntList(5, null);
SLLList L2 = new SLLList(5);

```

The `SLLList` hides the detail that there exists a null link from the user. The `SLLList` class isn't very useful yet, so let's add an `addFirst` and `getFirst` method as simple warmup methods. Consider trying to write them yourself before reading on.

addFirst and getFirst

The Basic SLLList and Helper IntNode Class

```

public class SLLList {
    public IntNode first;

    public SLLList(int x) {
        first = new IntNode(x, null);
    }

    public void addFirst(int x) {
        first = new IntNode(x, first);
    }

    public int getFirst() {
        return first.item;
    }
}

public class IntNode {
    public int item;
    public IntNode next;

    public IntNode(int i, IntNode n) {
        item = i;
        next = n;
    }
}

```

Example usage:

```

SLLList L = new SLLList(15);
L.addFirst(10);
L.addFirst(5);
int x = L.getFirst();

```

[Video link](#)

`addFirst` is relatively straightforward if you understood chapter 2.1. With `IntLists`, we added to the front with the line of code `L = new IntList(5, L)`. Thus, we end up with:

```

public class SLLList {
    public IntNode first;

    public SLLList(int x) {
        first = new IntNode(x, null);
    }

    /** Adds an item to the front of the list. */
    public void addFirst(int x) {
        first = new IntNode(x, first);
    }
}

```

`getFirst` is even easier. We simply return `first.item`:

```

/** Retrieves the front item from the list. */
public int getFirst() {
    return first.item;
}

```

The resulting `SLLList` class is much easier to use. Compare:

```

SLLList L = new SLLList(15);
L.addFirst(10);
L.addFirst(5);
int x = L.getFirst();

```

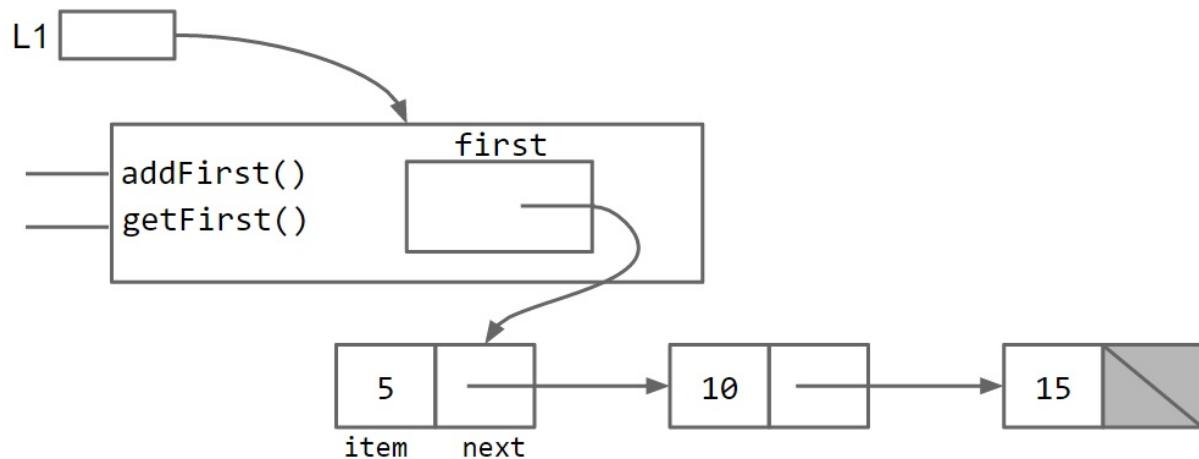
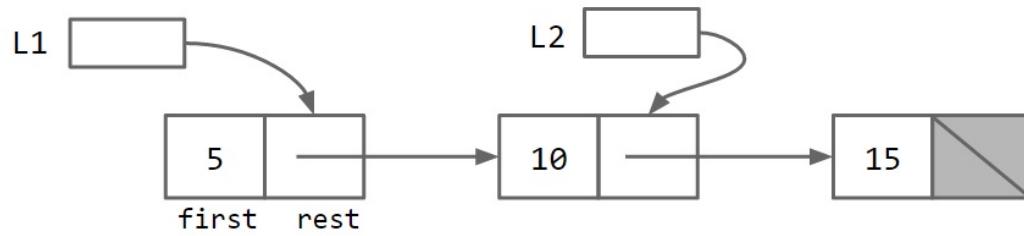
to the `IntList` equivalent:

```

IntList L = new IntList(15, null);
L = new IntList(10, L);
L = new IntList(5, L);
int x = L.first;

```

Comparing the two data structures visually, we have:



Essentially, the `SLLList` class acts as a middleman between the list user and the naked recursive data structure. As Ovid said: [Mortals cannot look upon a god without dying](#), so perhaps it is best that the `SLLList` is there to act as our intermediary.

Exercise 2.2.1: The curious reader might object and say that the `IntList` would be just as easy to use if we simply wrote an `addFirst` method. Try to write an `addFirst` method to the `IntList` class. You'll find that the resulting method is tricky as well as inefficient.

Improvement #3: Public vs. Private



Why Restrict Access?



Hide implementation details from users of your class.

- Less for user of class to understand.
- Safe for you to change private methods (implementation).

Car analogy:

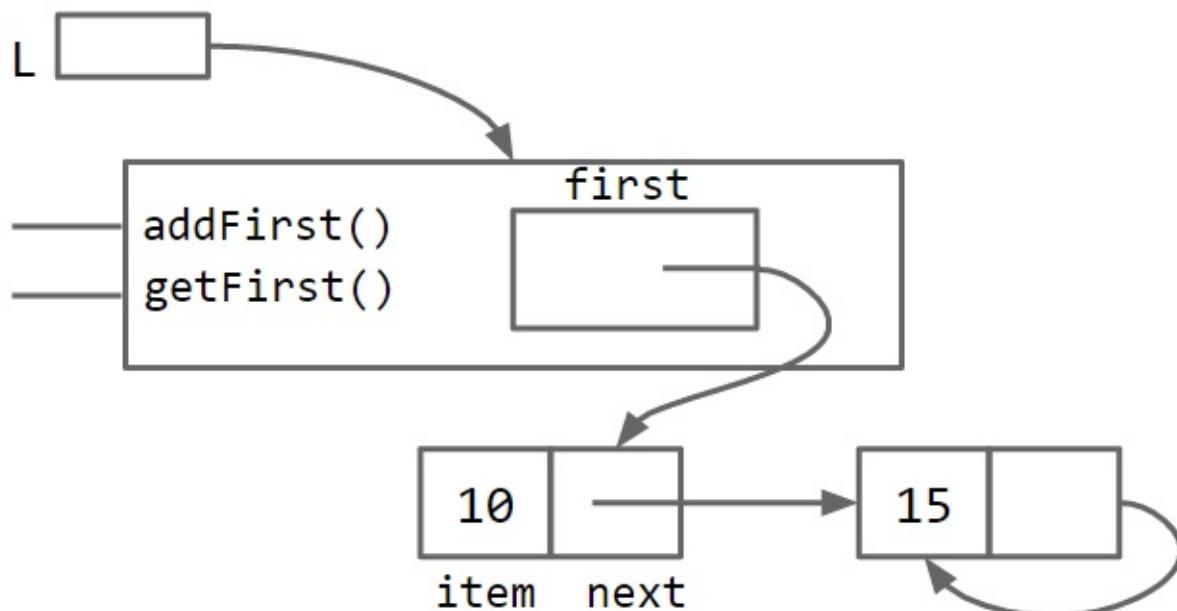
- **Public:** Pedals, Steering Wheel **Private:** Fuel line, Rotary valve
- Despite the term 'access control':
 - Nothing to do with protection against hackers, spies, and other evil entities.



[Video link](#)

Unfortunately, our `SLLList` can be bypassed and the raw power of our naked data structure (with all its dangers) can be accessed. A programmer can easily modify the list directly, without going through the kid-tested, mother-approved `addFirst` method, for example:

```
SLLList L = new SLLList(15);
L.addFirst(10);
L.first.next.next = L.first.next;
```



This results in a malformed list with an infinite loop. To deal with this problem, we can modify the `SLLList` class so that the `first` variable is declared with the `private` keyword.

```
public class SLLList {
    private IntNode first;
    ...
}
```

Private variables and methods can only be accessed by code inside the same `.java` file, e.g. in this case `SLLList.java`. That means that a class like `SLLTroubleMaker` below will fail to compile, yielding a `first has private access in SLLList` error.

```
public class SLLTroubleMaker {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        SLLList L = new SLLList(15);
        L.addFirst(10);
        L.first.next.next = L.first.next;
    }
}
```

By contrast, any code inside the `SLLList.java` file will be able to access the `first` variable.

It may seem a little silly to restrict access. After all, the only thing that the `private` keyword does is break programs that otherwise compile. However, in large software engineering projects, the `private` keyword is an invaluable signal that certain pieces of code should be ignored (and thus need not be understood) by the end user. Likewise, the `public` keyword should be thought of as a declaration that a method is available and will work **forever** exactly as it does now.

As an analogy, a car has certain `public` features, e.g. the accelerator and brake pedals. Under the hood, there are `private` details about how these operate. In a gas powered car, the accelerator pedal might control some sort of fuel injection system, and in a battery powered car, it may adjust the amount of battery power being delivered to the motor. While the private details may vary from car to car, we expect the same behavior from all accelerator pedals. Changing these would cause great consternation from users, and quite possibly terrible accidents.

When you create a `public` member (i.e. method or variable), be careful, because you're effectively committing to supporting that member's behavior exactly as it is now, forever.

Improvement #4: Nested Classes

At the moment, we have two `.java` files: `IntNode` and `SLLList`. However, the `IntNode` is really just a supporting character in the story of `SLLList`.

Java provides us with the ability to embed a class declaration inside of another for just this situation. The syntax is straightforward and intuitive:

```
public class SLLList {
    public class IntNode {
        public int item;
        public IntNode next;
        public IntNode(int i, IntNode n) {
            item = i;
            next = n;
        }
    }

    private IntNode first;

    public SLLList(int x) {
        first = new IntNode(x, null);
    }
    ...
}
```

Having a nested class has no meaningful effect on code performance, and is simply a tool for keeping code organized. For more on nested classes, see [Oracle's official documentation](#).

If the nested class has no need to use any of the instance methods or variables of `SLLList`, you may declare the nested class `static`, as follows. Declaring a nested class as `static` means that methods inside the static class can not access any of the members of the enclosing class. In this case, it means that no method in `IntNode` would be able to access `first`, `addFirst`, or `getFirst`.

```
public class SLLList {
    public static class IntNode {
        public int item;
        public IntNode next;
        public IntNode(int i, IntNode n) {
            item = i;
            next = n;
        }
    }

    private IntNode first;
    ...
}
```

This saves a bit of memory, because each `IntNode` no longer needs to keep track of how to access its enclosing `SLLList`.

Put another way, if you examine the code above, you'll see that the `IntNode` class never uses the `first` variable of `SLLList`, nor any of `SLLList`'s methods. As a result, we can use the `static` keyword, which means the `IntNode` class doesn't get a reference to its boss, saving us a small amount of memory.

If this seems a bit technical and hard to follow, try Exercise 2.2.2. A simple rule of thumb is that *if you don't use any instance members of the outer class, make the nested class static*.

Exercise 2.2.2 Delete the word `static` as few times as possible so that [this program](#) compiles. Make sure to read the comments at the top before doing the exercise.

addLast() and size()

Adding More SLLList Functionality

To motivate our remaining improvements, and to give more functionality to our `SLLList` class, let's add:

- `.addLast(int x)`
- `.size()`

Recommendations: do it.

<code>addFirst(int x)</code>	#1	Rebranding: <code>IntList</code> → <code>IntNode</code>
<code>getFirst</code>	#2	Bureaucracy: <code>SLLList</code>
	#3	Access Control: <code>public</code> → <code>private</code>
	#4	Nested Class: Bringing <code>IntNode</code> into <code>SLLList</code>

[Video link](#)

To motivate our remaining improvements and also demonstrate some common patterns in data structure implementation, we'll add `addLast(int x)` and `size()` methods. You're encouraged to take the [starter code](#) and try it yourself before reading on. I especially encourage you to try to write a recursive implementation of `size`, which will yield an interesting challenge.

I'll implement the `addLast` method iteratively, though you could also do it recursively. The idea is fairly straightforward, we create a pointer variable `p` and have it iterate through the list to the end.

```
/** Adds an item to the end of the list. */
public void addLast(int x) {
    IntNode p = first;

    /* Advance p to the end of the list. */
    while (p.next != null) {
        p = p.next;
    }
    p.next = new IntNode(x, null);
}
```

By contrast, I'll implement `size` recursively. This method will be somewhat similar to the `size` method we implemented in section 2.1 for `IntList`.

The recursive call for `size` in `IntList` was straightforward: `return 1 + this.rest.size()`. For a `SLList`, this approach does not make sense. A `SLList` has no `rest` variable. Instead, we'll use a common pattern that is used with middleman classes like `SLList` -- we'll create a private helper method that interacts with the underlying naked recursive data structure.

This yields a method like the following:

```
/** Returns the size of the list starting at IntNode p. */
private static int size(IntNode p) {
    if (p.next == null) {
        return 1;
    }

    return 1 + size(p.next);
}
```

Using this method, we can easily compute the size of the entire list:

```
public int size() {
    return size(first);
}
```

Here, we have two methods, both named `size`. This is allowed in Java, since they have different parameters. We say that two methods with the same name but different signatures are **overloaded**. For more on overloaded methods, see Java's [official documentation](#).

An alternate approach is to create a non-static helper method in the `IntNode` class itself. Either approach is fine, though I personally prefer not having any methods in the `IntNode` class.

Improvement #5: Caching

The screenshot shows a video conference interface. On the right, there is a small video window of a man with glasses and a beard. To his left is a presentation slide with the following content:

Improvement #5: Fast size()

Solution: Maintain a special size variable that **caches** the size of the list.

- Caching: putting aside data to speed up retrieval.

TANSTAAFL: The Answer to Every Question is **Fast**.
• But spreading the cost of computation over time can be better than any other approach.

The background of the slide shows several windows of a development environment, likely Jupyter Notebook or a similar Python IDE, displaying code and output.

[Video link](#)

Consider the `size` method we wrote above. Suppose `size` takes 2 seconds on a list of size 1,000. We expect that on a list of size 1,000,000, the `size` method will take 2,000 seconds, since the computer has to step through 1,000 times as many items in the list to reach the end. Having a `size` method that is very slow for large lists is unacceptable, since we can do better.

It is possible to rewrite `size` so that it takes the same amount of time, no matter how large the list.

To do so, we can simply add a `size` variable to the `SLList` class that tracks the current size, yielding the code below. This practice of saving important data to speed up retrieval is sometimes known as **caching**.

```

public class SLLList {
    ... /* IntNode declaration omitted. */
    private IntNode first;
    private int size;

    public SLLList(int x) {
        first = new IntNode(x, null);
        size = 1;
    }

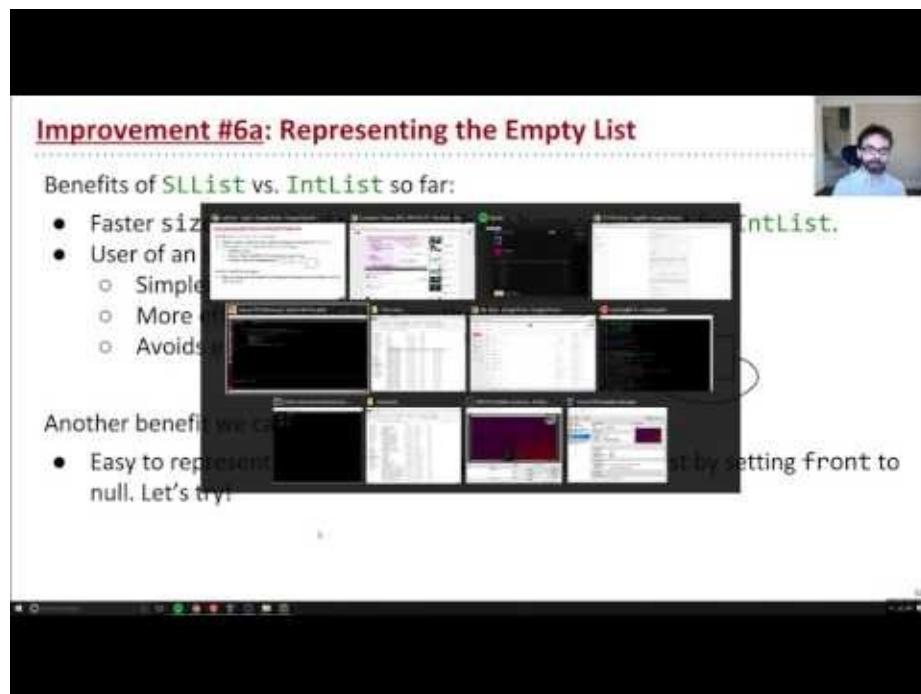
    public void addFirst(int x) {
        first = new IntNode(x, first);
        size += 1;
    }

    public int size() {
        return size;
    }
    ...
}

```

This modification makes our `size` method incredibly fast, no matter how large the list. Of course, it will also slow down our `addFirst` and `addLast` methods, and also increase the memory of usage of our class, but only by a trivial amount. In this case, the tradeoff is clearly in favor of creating a cache for size.

Improvement #6: The Empty List



[Video link](#)

Our `SLLList` has a number of benefits over the simple `IntList` from chapter 2.1:

- Users of a `SLLList` never see the `IntList` class.
 - Simpler to use.
 - More efficient `addFirst` method (exercise 2.2.1).
 - Avoids errors or malfeasance by `IntList` users.
- Faster `size` method than possible with `IntList`.

Another natural advantage is that we will be able to easily implement a constructor that creates an empty list. The most natural way is to set `first` to `null` if the list is empty. This yields the constructor below:

```
public SLLList() {
    first = null;
    size = 0;
}
```

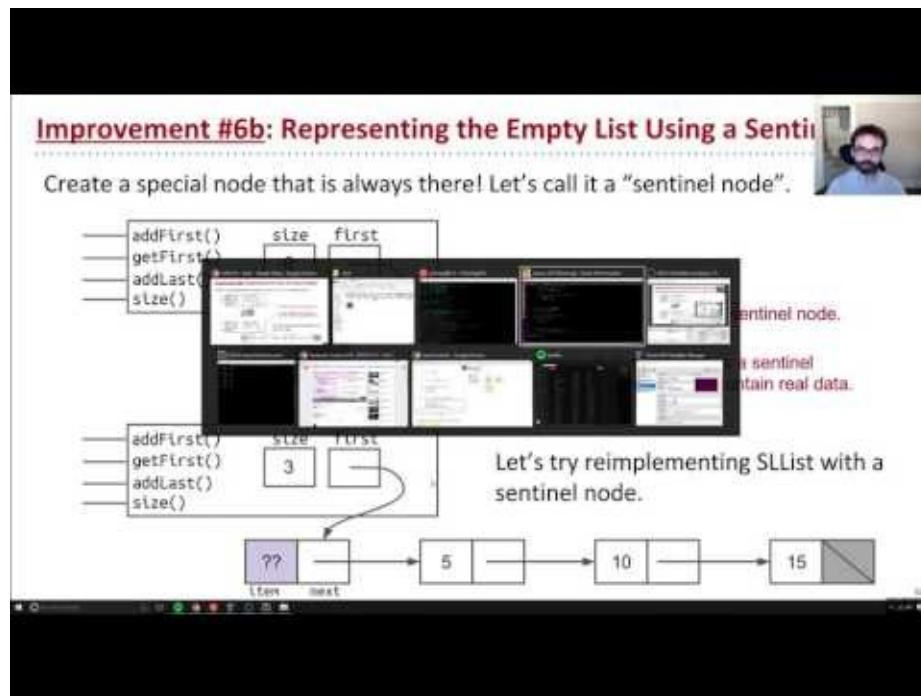
Unfortunately, this causes our `addLast` method to crash if we insert into an empty list. Since `first` is `null`, the attempt to access `p.next` in `while (p.next != null)` below causes a null pointer exception.

```
public void addLast(int x) {
    size += 1;
    IntNode p = first;
    while (p.next != null) {
        p = p.next;
    }

    p.next = new IntNode(x, null);
}
```

Exercise 2.2.2: Fix the `addLast` method. Starter code [here](#).

Improvement #6b: Sentinel Nodes



[Video link](#)

One solution to fix `addLast` is to create a special case for the empty list, as shown below:

```
public void addLast(int x) {
    size += 1;

    if (first == null) {
        first = new IntNode(x, null);
        return;
    }

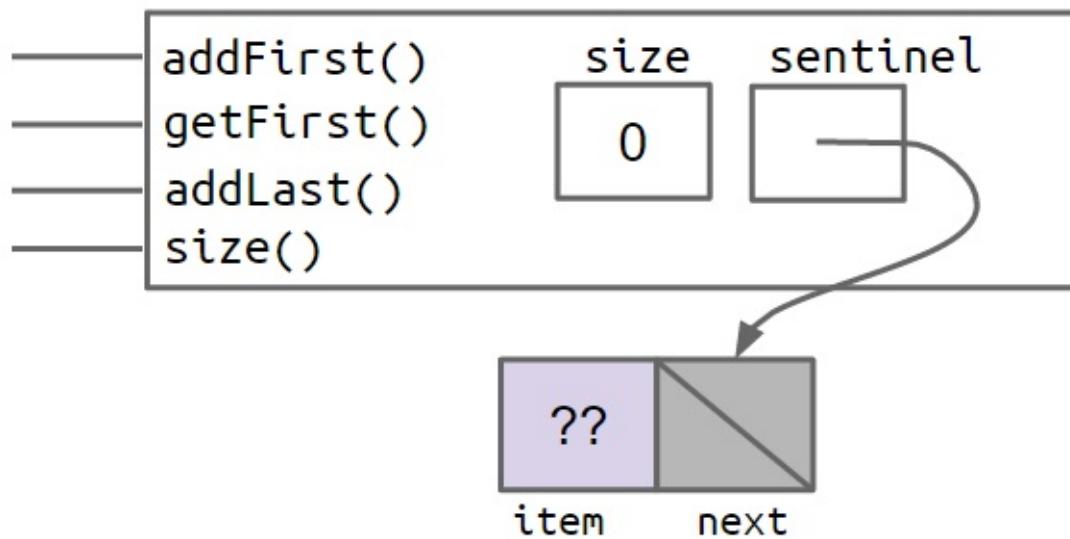
    IntNode p = first;
    while (p.next != null) {
        p = p.next;
    }

    p.next = new IntNode(x, null);
}
```

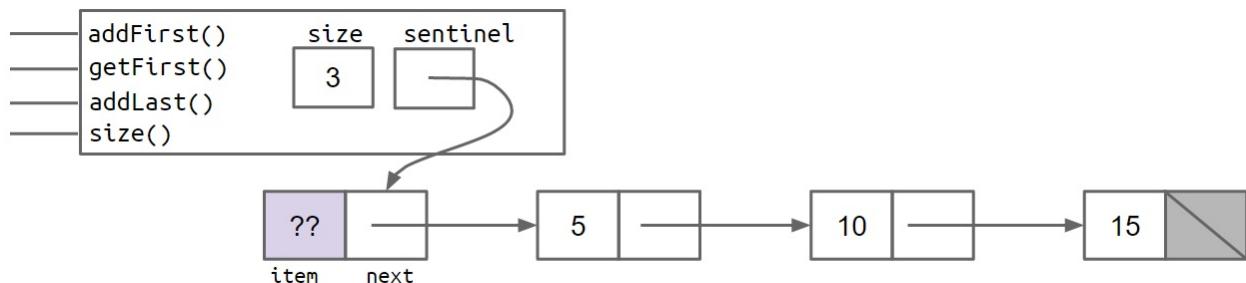
This solution works, but special case code like that shown above should be avoided when necessary. Human beings only have so much working memory, and thus we want to keep complexity under control wherever possible. For a simple data structure like the `SLLList`, the number of special cases is small. More complicated data structures like trees can get much, much uglier.

A cleaner, though less obvious solution, is to make it so that all `SLLLists` are the "same", even if they are empty. We can do this by creating a special node that is always there, which we will call a **sentinel node**. The sentinel node will hold a value, which we won't care about.

For example, the empty list created by `SLLList L = new SLLList()` would be as shown below:



And a `SLLList` with the items 5, 10, and 15 would look like:



In the figures above, the lavender `??` value indicates that we don't care what value is there. Since Java does not allow us to fill in an integer with question marks, we just pick some arbitrary value like `-518273` or `63` or anything else.

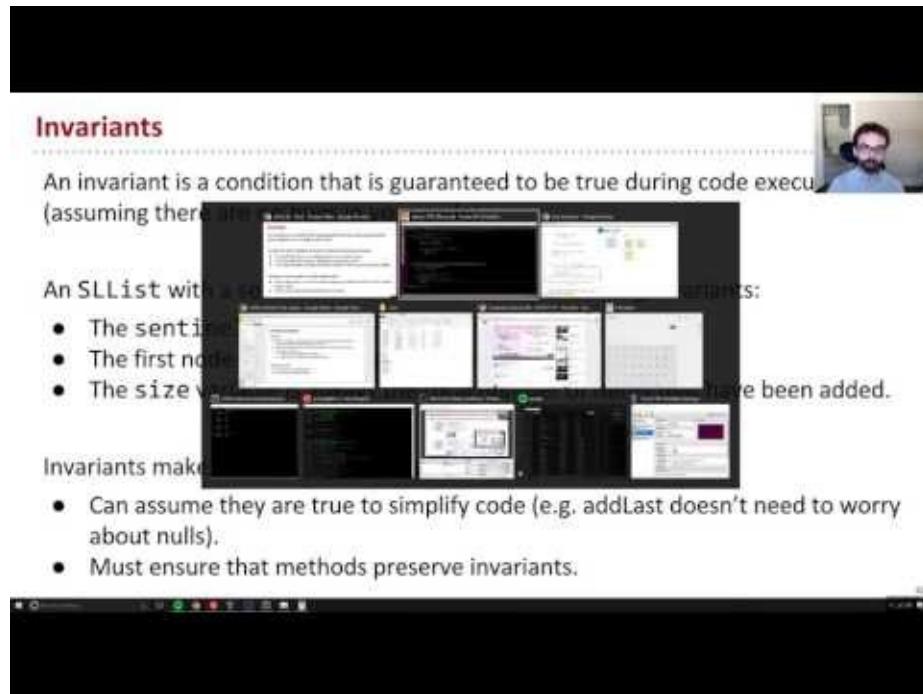
Since a `SLLList` without a sentinel has no special cases, we can simply delete the special case from our `addLast` method, yielding:

```
public void addLast(int x) {
    size += 1;
    IntNode p = sentinel;
    while (p.next != null) {
        p = p.next;
    }

    p.next = new IntNode(x, null);
}
```

As you can see, this code is much much cleaner!

Invariants



Invariants

An invariant is a condition that is guaranteed to be true during code execution (assuming there are no bugs in your code).

An SLLList with a sentinel node has at least the following invariants:

- The `sentinel` reference always points to a sentinel node.
- The front item (if it exists), is always at `sentinel.next.item`.
- The `size` variable is always the total number of items that have been added.

Invariants make it easier to reason about code, and also give you specific goals to strive for in making sure your code works.

- Can assume they are true to simplify code (e.g. `addLast` doesn't need to worry about nulls).
- Must ensure that methods preserve invariants.

[Video link](#)

An invariant is a fact about a data structure that is guaranteed to be true (assuming there are no bugs in your code).

A `SLLList` with a sentinel node has at least the following invariants:

- The `sentinel` reference always points to a sentinel node.
- The front item (if it exists), is always at `sentinel.next.item`.
 - The `size` variable is always the total number of items that have been added.

Invariants make it easier to reason about code, and also give you specific goals to strive for in making sure your code works.

A true understanding of how convenient sentinels are will require you to really dig in and do some implementation of your own. You'll get plenty of practice in project 1. However, I recommend that you wait until after you've finished the next section of this book before beginning project 1.

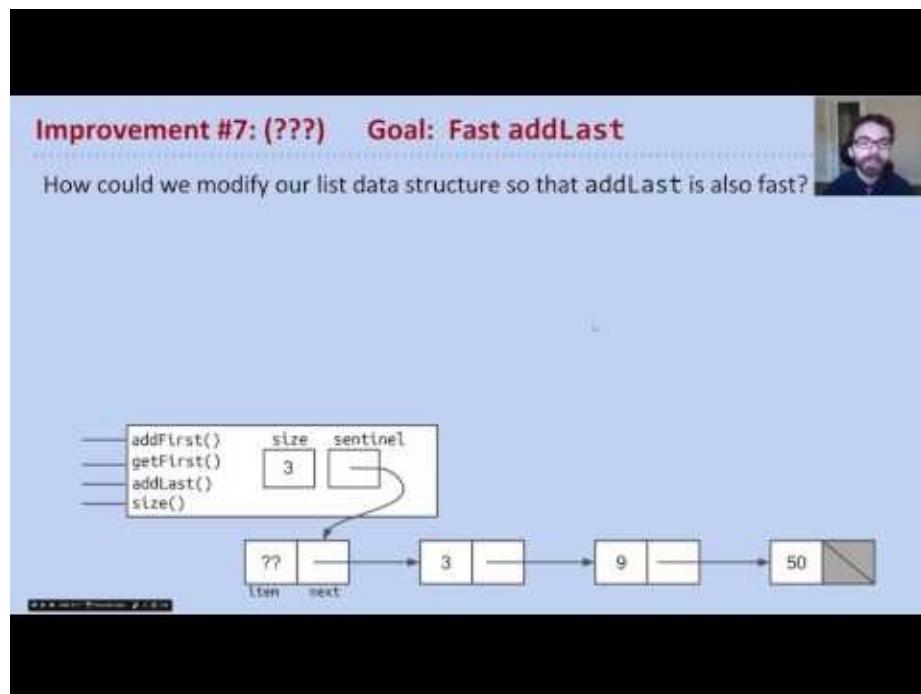
What Next

Nothing for this chapter. However, if you're taking the Berkeley course, you're welcome to now begin Lab 2.

DLLists

In Chapter 2.2, we built the `SLLList` class, which was better than our earlier naked recursive `IntList` data structure. In this section, we'll wrap up our discussion of linked lists, and also start learning the foundations of arrays that we'll need for an array based list we'll call an `AList`. Along the way, we'll also reveal the secret of why we used the awkward name `SLLList` in the previous chapter.

addLast



[Video link](#)

Consider the `addLast(int x)` method from the previous chapter.

```
public void addLast(int x) {
    size += 1;
    IntNode p = sentinel;
    while (p.next != null) {
        p = p.next;
    }

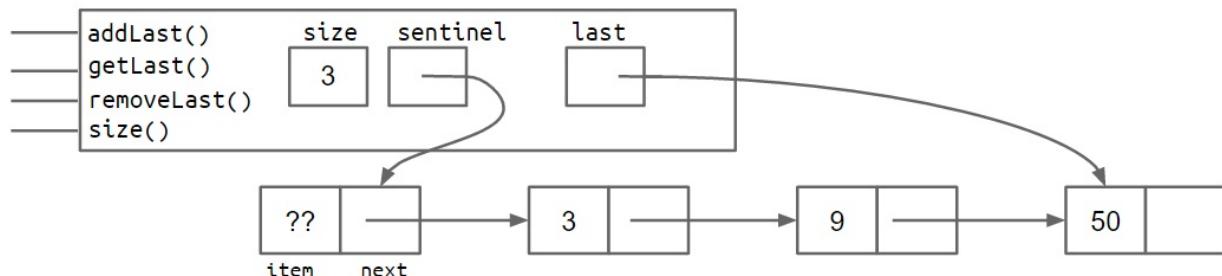
    p.next = new IntNode(x, null);
}
```

The issue with this method is that it is slow. For a long list, the `addLast` method has to walk through the entire list, much like we saw with the `size` method in chapter 2.2. Similarly, we can attempt to speed things up by adding a `last` variable, to speed up our code, as shown below:

```
public class SLList {
    private IntNode sentinel;
    private IntNode last;
    private int size;

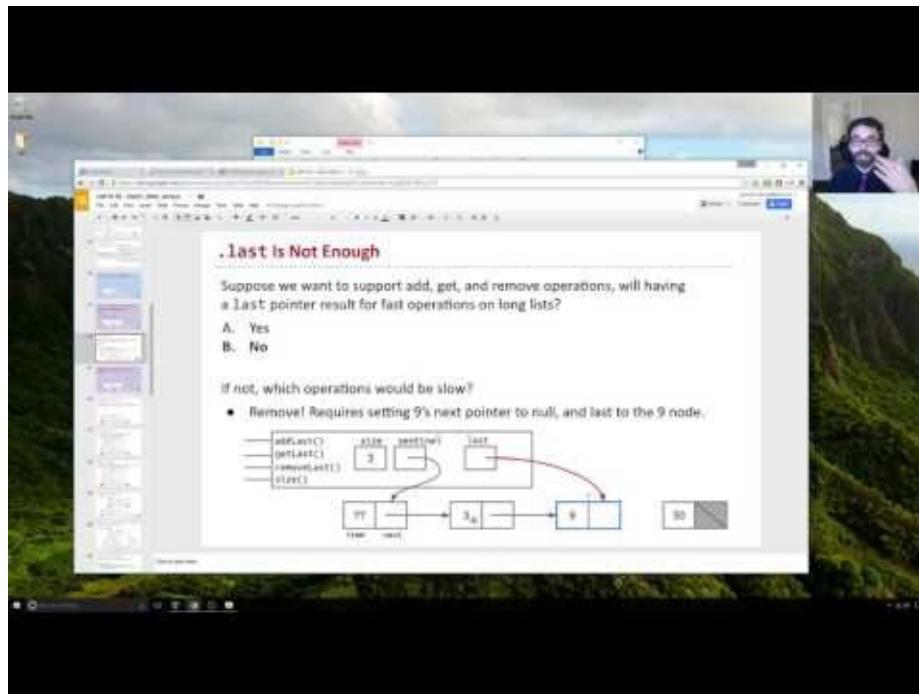
    public void addLast(int x) {
        last.next = new IntNode(x, null);
        last = last.next;
        size += 1;
    }
    ...
}
```

Exercise 2.3.1: Consider the box and pointer diagram representing the `SLList` implementation above, which includes the `last` pointer. Suppose that we'd like to support `addLast`, `getLast`, and `removeLast` operations. Will the structure shown support rapid `addLast`, `getLast`, and `removeLast` operations? If not, which operations are slow?



Answer 2.3.1: `addLast` and `getLast` will be fast, but `removeLast` will be slow. That's because we have no easy way to get the second-to-last node, to update the `last` pointer, after removing the last node.

SecondToLast



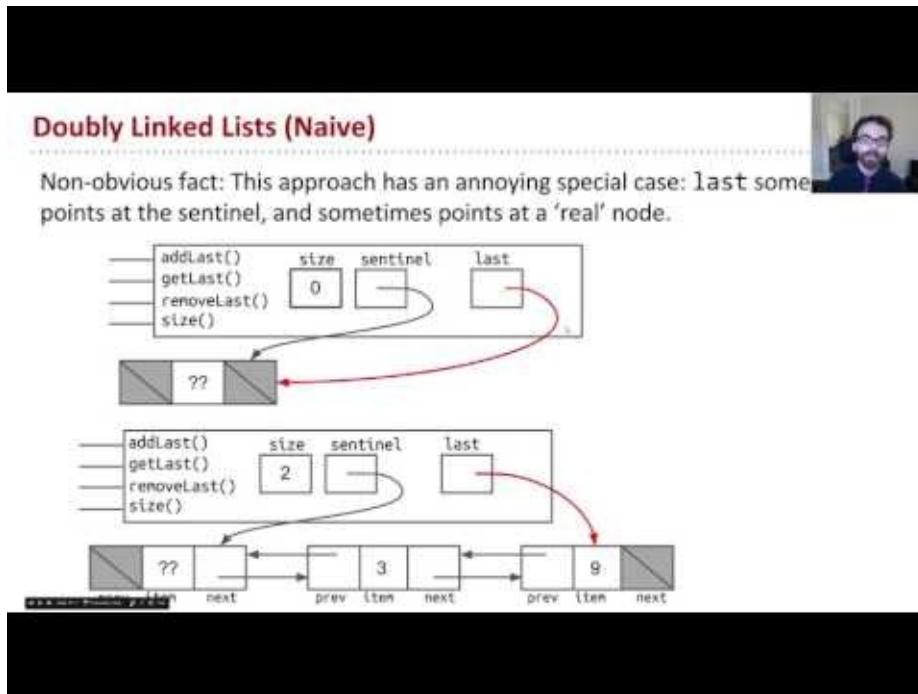
[Video link](#)

The issue with the structure from exercise 2.3.1 is that a method that removes the last item in the list will be inherently slow. This is because we need to first find the second to last item, and then set its next pointer to be null. Adding a `secondToLast` pointer will not help either, because then we'd need to find the third to last item in the list in order to make sure that `secondToLast` and `last` obey the appropriate invariants after removing the last item.

Exercise 2.3.2: Try to devise a scheme for speeding up the `removeLast` operation so that it always runs in constant time, no matter how long the list. Don't worry about actually coding up a solution, we'll leave that to project 1. Just come up with an idea about how you'd modify the structure of the list (i.e. the instance variables).

We'll describe the solution in Improvement #7.

Improvement #7: Looking Back



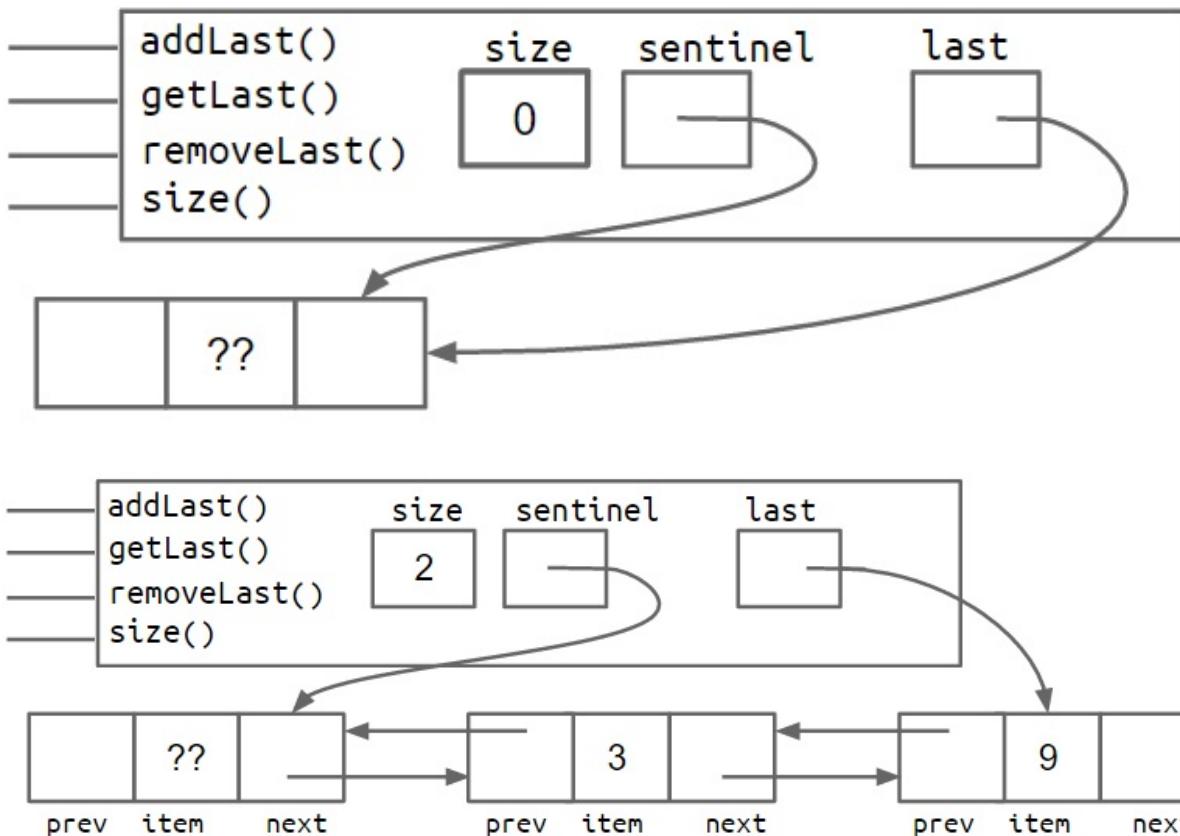
[Video link](#)

The most natural way to tackle this issue is to add a previous pointer to each `IntNode`, i.e.

```
public class IntNode {
    public IntNode prev;
    public int item;
    public IntNode next;
}
```

In other words, our list now has two links for every node. One common term for such lists is the "Doubly Linked List", which we'll call a `DLList` for short. This is in contrast to a single linked list from chapter 2.2, a.k.a. an `SLList`.

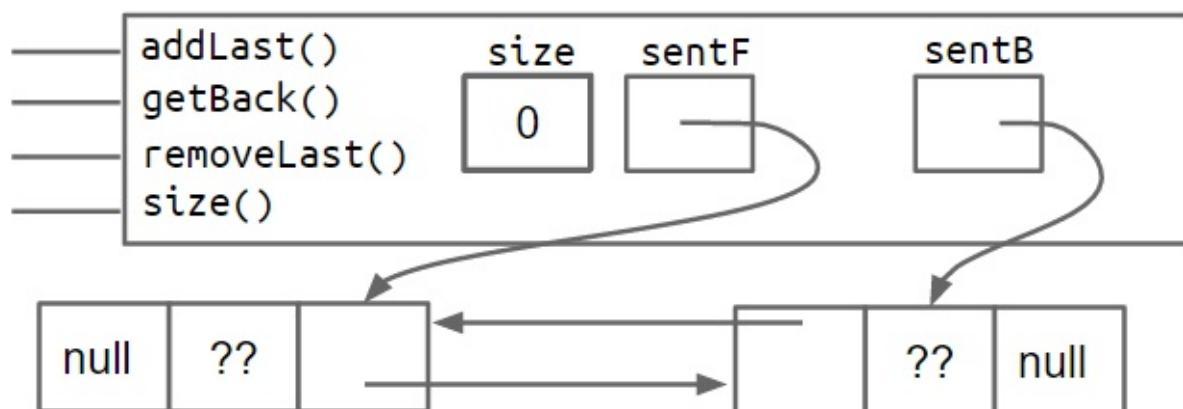
The addition of these extra pointers will lead to extra code complexity. Rather than walk you through it, you'll build a doubly linked list on your own in project 1. The box and pointer diagram below shows more precisely what a doubly linked list looks like for lists of size 0 and size 2, respectively.

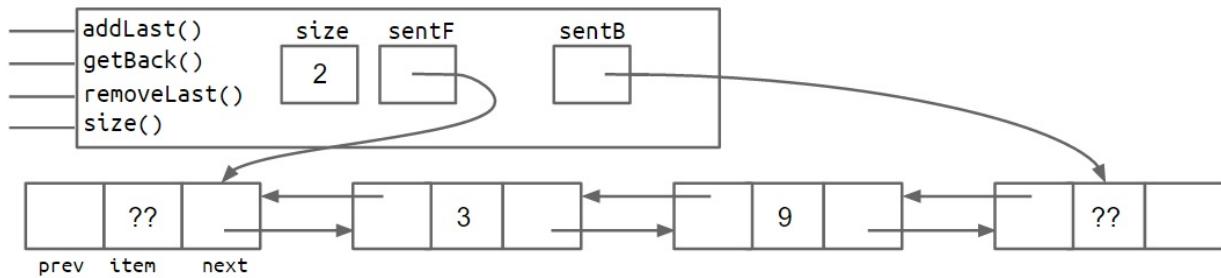


Improvement #8: Sentinel Upgrade

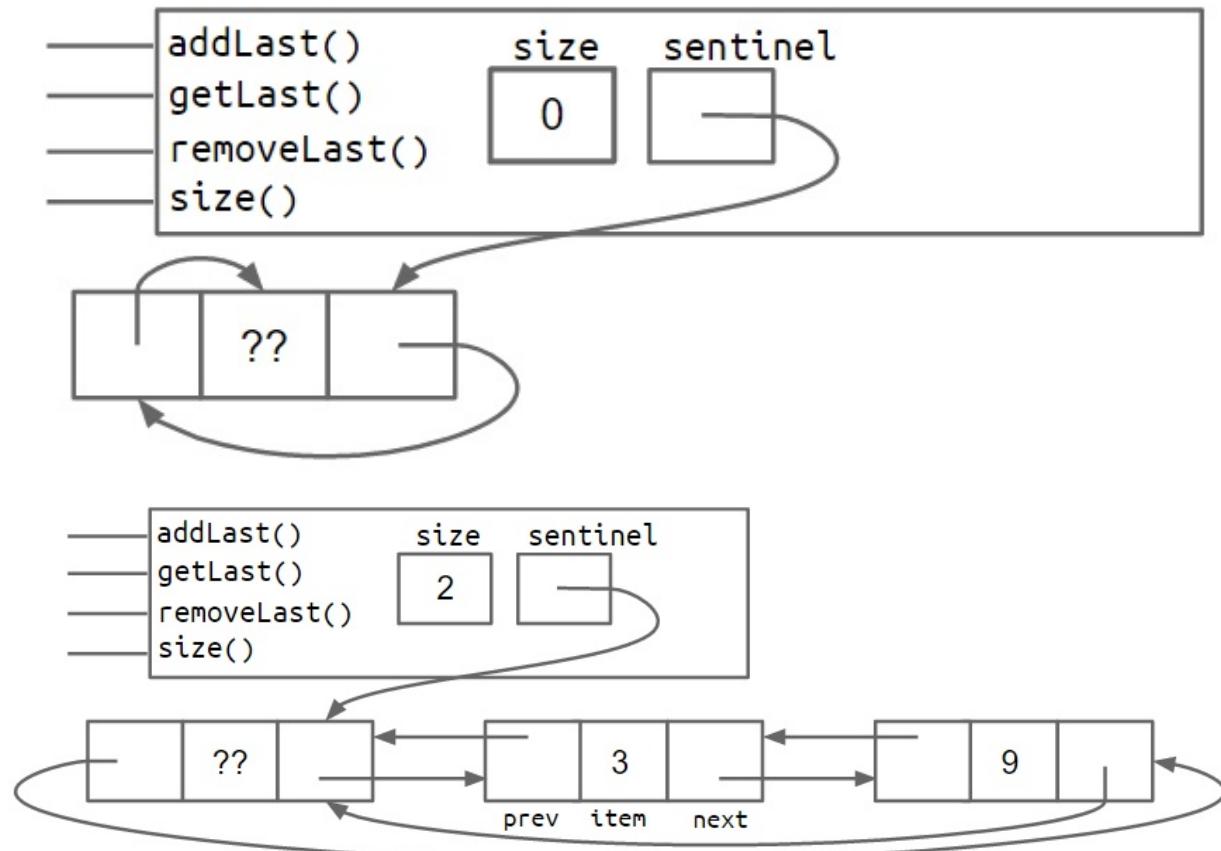
Back pointers allow a list to support adding, getting, and removing the front and back of a list in constant time. There is a subtle issue with this design where the `last` pointer sometimes points at the sentinel node, and sometimes at a real node. Just like the non-sentinel version of the `SLLList`, this results in code with special cases that is much uglier than what we'll get after our 8th and final improvement. (Can you think of what `DLList` methods would have these special cases?)

One fix is to add a second sentinel node to the back of the list. This results in the topology shown below as a box and pointer diagram.



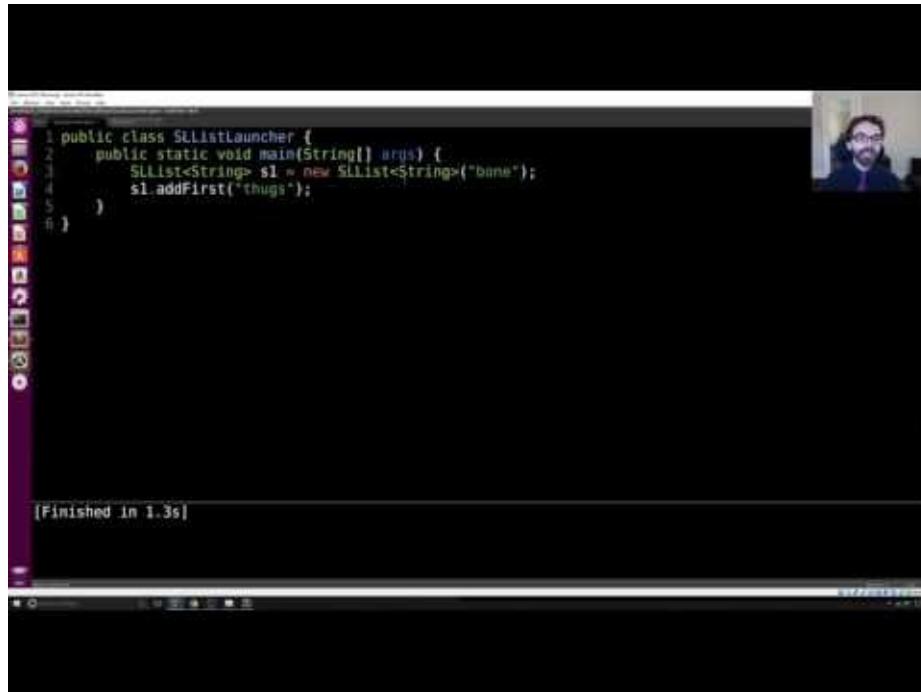


An alternate approach is to implement the list so that it is circular, with the front and back pointers sharing the same sentinel node.



Both the two-sentinel and circular sentinel approaches work and result in code that is free of ugly special cases, though I personally find the circular approach to be cleaner and more aesthetically beautiful. We will not discuss the details of these implementations, as you'll have a chance to explore one or both in project 1.

Generic DLLLists



[Video link](#)

Our DLLLists suffer from a major limitation: they can only hold integer values. For example, suppose we wanted to create a list of Strings:

```
DLLList d2 = new DLLList("hello");
d2.addLast("world");
```

The code above would crash, since our `DLLList` constructor and `addLast` methods only take an integer argument.

Luckily, in 2004, the creators of Java added **generics** to the language, which will allow you to, among other things, create data structures that hold any reference type.

The syntax is a little strange to grasp at first. The basic idea is that right after the name of the class in your class declaration, you use an arbitrary placeholder inside angle brackets: `<>`. Then anywhere you want to use the arbitrary type, you use that placeholder instead.

For example, our `DLLList` declaration before was:

```

public class DLList {
    private IntNode sentinel;
    private int size;

    public class IntNode {
        public IntNode prev;
        public int item;
        public IntNode next;
        ...
    }
    ...
}

```

A generic `DLList` that can hold any type would look as below:

```

public class DLList<BleepBloop> {
    private IntNode sentinel;
    private int size;

    public class IntNode {
        public IntNode prev;
        public BleepBloop item;
        public IntNode next;
        ...
    }
    ...
}

```

Here, `BleepBloop` is just a name I made up, and you could use most any other name you might care to use instead, like `GloopGlop`, `Horse`, `TelbudorphMulticulus` or whatever.

Now that we've defined a generic version of the `DLList` class, we must also use a special syntax to instantiate this class. To do so, we put the desired type inside of angle brackets during declaration, and also use empty angle brackets during instantiation. For example:

```

DLList<String> d2 = new DLList<>("hello");
d2.addLast("world");

```

Since generics only work with reference types, we cannot put primitives like `int` or `double` inside of angle brackets, e.g. `<int>`. Instead, we use the reference version of the primitive type, which in the case of `int` case is `Integer`, e.g.

```

DLList<Integer> d1 = new DLList<>(5);
d1.insertFront(10);

```

There are additional nuances about working with generic types, but we will defer them to a later chapter of this book, when you've had more of a chance to experiment with them on your own. For now, use the following rules of thumb:

- In the .java file **implementing** a data structure, specify your generic type name only once at the very top of the file after the class name.
- In other .java files, which use your data structure, specify the specific desired type during declaration, and use the empty diamond operator during instantiation.
- If you need to instantiate a generic over a primitive type, use `Integer` , `Double` , `Character` , `Boolean` , `Long` , `Short` , `Byte` , or `Float` instead of their primitive equivalents.

Minor detail: You may also declare the type inside of angle brackets when instantiating, though this is not necessary, so long as you are also declaring a variable on the same line. In other words, the following line of code is perfectly valid, even though the `Integer` on the right hand side is redundant.

```
DLLList<Integer> d1 = new DLLList<Integer>(5);
```

At this point, you know everything you need to know to implement the `LinkedListDeque` project on project 1, where you'll refine all of the knowledge you've gained in chapters 2.1, 2.2, and 2.3.

What Next

- The first part of [Project 1](#), where you implement `LinkedListDeque.java` .

Arrays

Arrays

Arrays consist of:

- A fixed integer **length** (cannot change!)
- A sequence of **N** memory boxes where **N=length**, such that:
 - All of the boxes hold the same type of value (and have same # of bits).
 - The boxes are numbered 0 through length-1.



Like instances of classes:

- You get one reference when its created.
- If you reassign all variables containing that reference, you can never get the array back.

Unlike classes, arrays do not have methods.



[Video link](#)

So far, we've seen how to harness recursive class definitions to create an expandable list class, including the `IntList`, `SLList`, and `DLList`. In the next two sections of this book, we'll discuss how to build a list class using arrays.

This section of this book assumes you've already worked with arrays and is not intended to be a comprehensive guide to their syntax.

Array Basics

To ultimately build a list that can hold information, we need some way to get memory boxes. Previously, we saw how we could get memory boxes with variable declarations and class instantiations. For example:

- `int x` gives us a 32 bit memory box that stores ints.
- `Walrus w1` gives us a 64 bit memory box that stores Walrus references.
- `Walrus w2 = new Walrus(30, 5.6)` gets us 3 total memory boxes. One 64 bit box that stores Walrus references, one 32 bit box that stores the int size of the Walrus, and a 64 bit box that stores the double tuskSize of the Walrus.

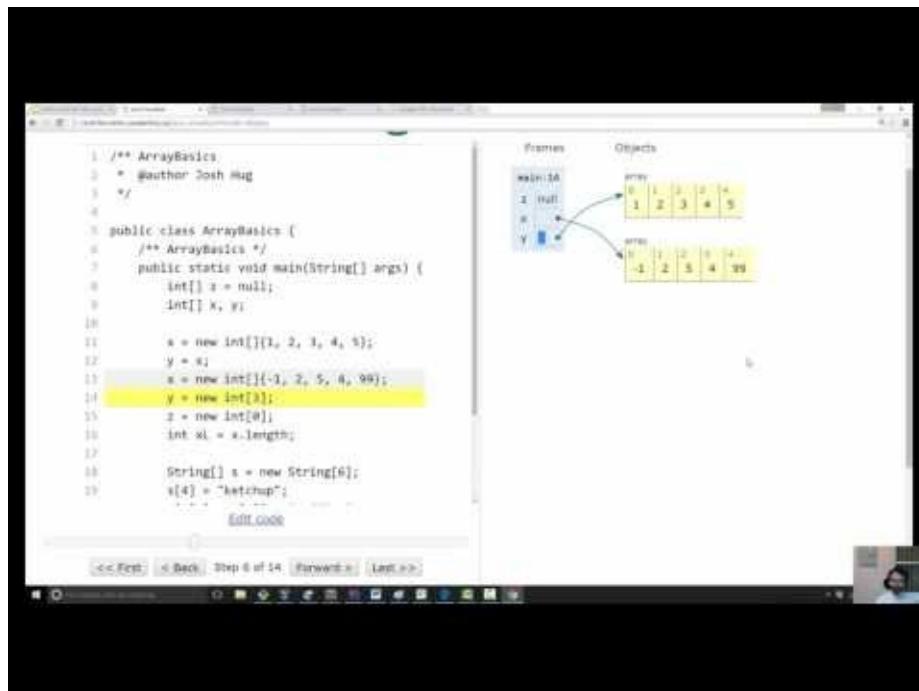
Arrays are a special type of object that consists of a numbered sequence of memory boxes. This is unlike class instances, which have named memory boxes. To get the i th item of an array, we use bracket notation as we saw in HW0 and Project 0, e.g. `A[i]` to get the i th element of `A`.

Arrays consist of:

- A fixed integer length, N
- A sequence of N memory boxes ($N = \text{length}$) where all boxes are of the same type, and are numbered 0 through $N - 1$.

Unlike classes, arrays do not have methods.

Array Creation



[Video link](#)

There are three valid notations for array creation. Try running the code below and see what happens. Click [here](#) for an interactive visualization.

- `x = new int[3];`
- `y = new int[]{1, 2, 3, 4, 5};`
- `int[] z = {9, 10, 11, 12, 13};`

All three notations create an array. The first notation, used to create `x`, will create an array of the specified length and fill in each memory box with a default value. In this case, it will create an array of length 3, and fill each of the 3 boxes with the default `int` value 0.

The second notation, used to create `y`, creates an array with the exact size needed to accomodate the specified starting values. In this case, it creates an array of length 5, with those five specific elements.

The third notation, used to declare **and** create `z`, has the same behavior as the second notation. The only difference is that it omits the usage of `new`, and can only be used when combined with a variable declaration.

None of these notations is better than any other.

Array Access and Modification

The following code showcases all of the key syntax we'll use to work with arrays. Try stepping through the code below and making sure you understand what happens when each line executes. To do so, click [here](#) for an interactive visualization. With the exception of the final line of code, we've seen all of this syntax before.

```
int[] z = null;
int[] x, y;

x = new int[]{1, 2, 3, 4, 5};
y = x;
x = new int[]{-1, 2, 5, 4, 99};
y = new int[3];
z = new int[0];
int xL = x.length;

String[] s = new String[6];
s[4] = "ketchup";
s[x[3] - x[1]] = "muffins";

int[] b = {9, 10, 11};
System.arraycopy(b, 0, x, 3, 2);
```

The final line demonstrates one way to copy information from one array to another.

`System.arraycopy` takes five parameters:

- The array to use as a source
- Where to start in the source array
- The array to use as a destination
- Where to start in the destination array
- How many items to copy

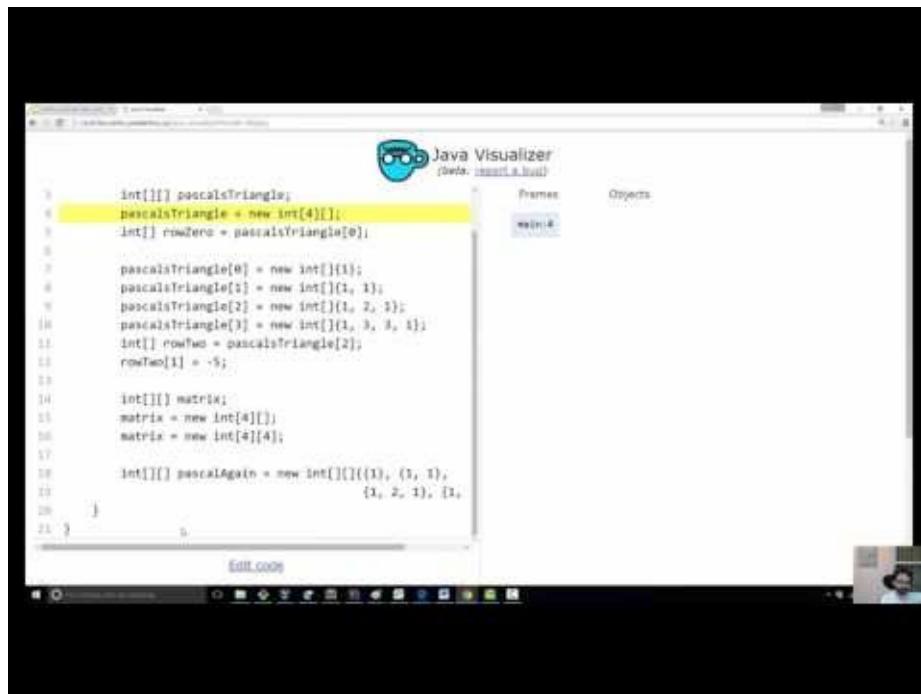
For Python veterans, `System.arraycopy(b, 0, x, 3, 2)` is the equivalent of `x[3:5] = b[0:2]` in Python.

An alternate approach to copying arrays would be to use a loop. `arraycopy` is usually faster than a loop, and results in more compact code. The only downside is that `arraycopy` is (arguably) harder to read. Note that Java arrays only perform bounds checking at runtime. That is, the following code compiles just fine, but will crash at runtime.

```
int[] x = {9, 10, 11, 12, 13};
int[] y = new int[2];
int i = 0;
while (i < x.length) {
    y[i] = x[i];
    i += 1;
}
```

Try running this code locally in a java file or in the [visualizer](#). What is the name of the error that you encounter when it crashes? Does the name of the error make sense?

2D Arrays in Java



[Video link](#)

What one might call a 2D array in Java is actually just an array of arrays. They follow the same rules for objects that we've already learned, but let's review them to make sure we understand how they work.

Syntax for arrays of arrays can be a bit confusing. Consider the code `int[][] bamboozle = new int[4][]`. This creates an array of integer arrays called `bamboozle`. Specifically, this creates exactly four memory boxes, each of which can point to an array of integers (of unspecified length).

Try running the code below line-by-lines, and see if the results match your intuition. For an interactive visualization, click [here](#).

```
int[][] pascalsTriangle;
pascalsTriangle = new int[4][];
int[] rowZero = pascalsTriangle[0];

pascalsTriangle[0] = new int[]{1};
pascalsTriangle[1] = new int[]{1, 1};
pascalsTriangle[2] = new int[]{1, 2, 1};
pascalsTriangle[3] = new int[]{1, 3, 3, 1};
int[] rowTwo = pascalsTriangle[2];
rowTwo[1] = -5;

int[][] matrix;
matrix = new int[4][];
matrix = new int[4][4];

int[][] pascalAgain = new int[][]{{1}, {1, 1},
{1, 2, 1}, {1, 3, 3, 1}};
```

Exercise 2.4.1: After running the code below, what will be the values of $x[0][0]$ and $w[0][0]$? Check your work by clicking [here](#).

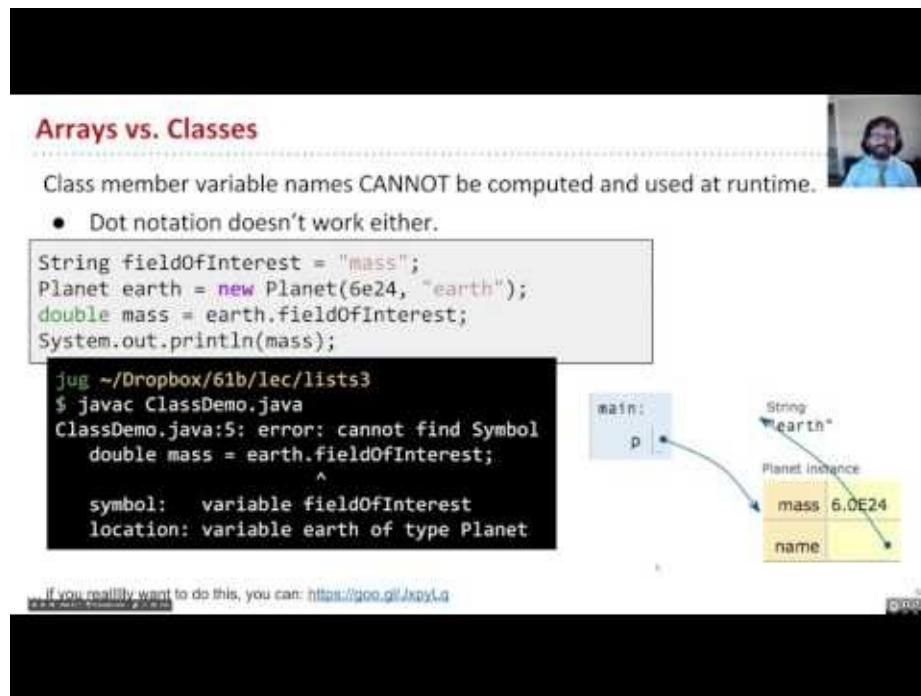
```
int[][] x = {{1, 2, 3}, {4, 5, 6}, {7, 8, 9}};

int[][] z = new int[3][];
z[0] = x[0];
z[1] = x[1];
z[2] = x[2];
z[0][0] = -z[0][0];

int[][] w = new int[3][3];
System.arraycopy(x[0], 0, w[0], 0, 3);
System.arraycopy(x[1], 0, w[1], 0, 3);
System.arraycopy(x[2], 0, w[2], 0, 3);
w[0][0] = -w[0][0];
```

Arrays vs. Classes

Arrays vs. Classes



Class member variable names CANNOT be computed and used at runtime.

- Dot notation doesn't work either.

```
String fieldOfInterest = "mass";
Planet earth = new Planet(6e24, "earth");
double mass = earth.fieldOfInterest;
System.out.println(mass);
```

```
jug ~/Dropbox/61b/lec/lists3
$ javac ClassDemo.java
ClassDemo.java:5: error: cannot find Symbol
    double mass = earth.fieldOfInterest;
               ^
  symbol:   variable fieldOfInterest
  location: variable earth of type Planet
```

If you really want to do this, you can: <https://goo.gl/kxyLq>

Video link

Both arrays and classes can be used to organize a bunch of memory boxes. In both cases, the number of memory boxes is fixed, i.e. the length of an array cannot be changed, just as class fields cannot be added or removed.

The key differences between memory boxes in arrays and classes:

- Array boxes are numbered and accessed using `[]` notation, and class boxes are named and accessed using dot notation.
- Array boxes must all be the same type. Class boxes can be different types.

One particularly notable impact of these difference is that `[]` notation allows us to specify which index we'd like at runtime. For example, consider the code below:

```
int indexOfInterest = askUserForInteger();
int[] x = {100, 101, 102, 103};
int k = x[indexOfInterest];
System.out.println(k);
```

If we run this code, we might get something like:

```
$ javac arrayDemo
$ java arrayDemo
What index do you want? 2
102
```

By contrast, specifying fields in a class is not something we do at runtime. For example, consider the code below:

```
String fieldOfInterest = "mass";
Planet p = new Planet(6e24, "earth");
double mass = p[fieldOfInterest];
```

If we tried compiling this, we'd get a syntax error.

```
$ javac classDemo
FieldDemo.java:5: error: array required, but Planet found
    double mass = earth[fieldOfInterest];
                           ^

```

The same problem occurs if we try to use dot notation:

```
String fieldOfInterest = "mass";
Planet p = new Planet(6e24, "earth");
double mass = p.fieldOfInterest;
```

Compiling, we'd get:

```
$ javac classDemo
FieldDemo.java:5: error: cannot find symbol
    double mass = earth.fieldOfInterest;
                           ^
symbol:   variable fieldOfInterest
location: variable earth of type Planet
```

This isn't a limitation you'll face often, but it's worth pointing out, just for the sake of good scholarship. For what it's worth, there is a way to specify desired fields at runtime called *reflection*, but it is considered very bad coding style for typical programs. You can read more about reflection [here](#). **You should never use reflection in any 61B program**, and we won't discuss it in our course.

In general, programming languages are partially designed to limit the choices of programmers to make code simpler to reason about. By restricting these sorts of features to the special Reflections API, we make typical Java programs easier to read and interpret.

Appendix: Java Arrays vs. Other Languages

Compared to arrays in other languages, Java arrays:

- Have no special syntax for "slicing" (such as in Python).

- Cannot be shrunk or expanded (such as in Ruby).
- Do not have member methods (such as in Javascript).
- Must contain values only of the same type (unlike Python).

In this section, we'll build a new class called `AList` that can be used to store arbitrarily long lists of data, similar to our `DLList`. Unlike the `DLList`, the `AList` will use arrays to store data instead of a linked list.

Linked List Performance Puzzle

Arbitrary Retrieval

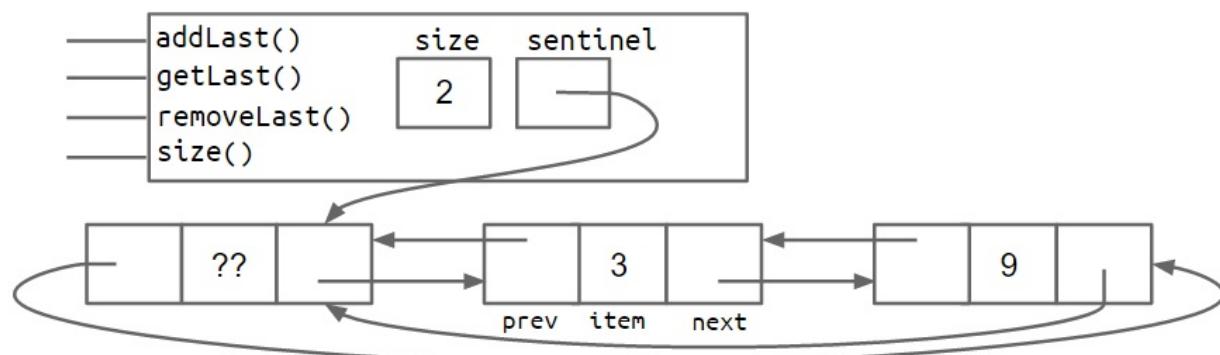
Suppose we added `get(int i)`, which returns the i th item from the list.

Why would `get` be slow for long lists compared to `getLast()`? For what inputs?

[Video link](#)

Suppose we wanted to write a new method for `DLList` called `int get(int i)`. Why would `get` be slow for long lists compared to `getLast`? For what inputs would it be especially slow?

You may find the figure below useful for thinking about your answer.



Linked List Performance Puzzle Solution

It turns out that no matter how clever you are, the `get` method will usually be slower than `getLast` if we're using the doubly linked list structure described in section 2.3.

This is because, since we only have references to the first and last items of the list, we'll always need to walk through the list from the front or back to get to the item that we're trying to retrieve. For example, if we want to get item #417 in a list of length 10,000, we'll have to walk across 417 forward links to get to the item we want.

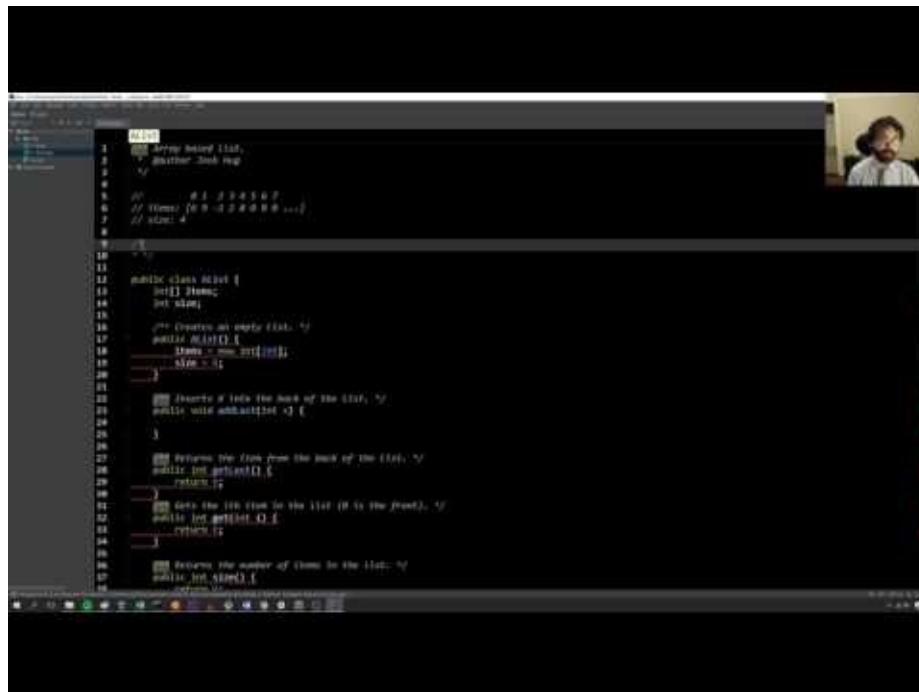
In the very worst case, the item is in the very middle and we'll need to walk through a number of items proportional to the length of the list (specifically, the number of items divided by two). In other words, our worst case execution time for `get` is linear in the size of the entire list. This in contrast to the runtime for `getBack`, which is constant, no matter the size of the list. Later in the course, we'll formally define runtimes in terms of big O and big Theta notation. For now, we'll stick to an informal understanding.

Our First Attempt: The Naive Array Based List

Accessing the i th element of an array takes constant time on a modern computer. This suggests that an array-based list would be capable of much better performance for `get` than a linked-list based solution, since it can simply use bracket notation to get the item of interest.

If you'd like to know **why** arrays have constant time access, check out this [Quora post](#).

Optional Exercise 2.5.1: Try to build an AList class that supports `addLast`, `getLast`, `get`, and `size` operations. Your AList should work for any size array up to 100. For starter code, see <https://github.com/Berkeley-CS61B/lectureCode/tree/master/lists4/DIY>.



[Video link](#)

My [solution](#) has the following handy invariants.

- The position of the next item to be inserted (using `addLast`) is always `size`.
- The number of items in the AList is always `size`.
- The position of the last item in the list is always `size - 1`.

Other solutions might be slightly different.

removeLast

The last operation we need to support is `removeLast`. Before we start, we make the following key observation: Any change to our list must be reflected in a change in one or more memory boxes in our implementation.

This might seem obvious, but there is some profundity to it. The list is an abstract idea, and the `size`, `items`, and `items[i]` memory boxes are the concrete representation of that idea. Any change the user tries to make to the list using the abstractions we provide (`addLast`, `removeLast`) must be reflected in some changes to these memory boxes in a way that matches the user's expectations. Our invariants provide us with a guide for what those changes should look like.

The Abstract vs. the Concrete

When we `removeLast()`, which memory boxes need to change? To what?

User's mental model: $\{5, 3, 1, 7, 22, -1\} \rightarrow \{5, 3, 1, 7, 22\}$

Actual truth:

Diagram illustrating the state of the list after `removeLast()`:

<code>addLast()</code>	<code>getLast()</code>	<code>removeLast()</code>	<code>get(int i)</code>	<code>size</code>	<code>items</code>
—	—	—	—	6	—

Below the diagram is a visual representation of a list as an array of memory boxes:

5	3	1	7	22	-1	0	0	...	0	0	0
8	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	97	98	99	

A callout arrow points from the `removeLast()` method in the diagram to the `0` value in the array at index 6.

[Video link](#)

Optional Exercise 2.5.2: Try to write `removeLast`. Before starting, decide which of `size`, `items`, and `items[i]` needs to change so that our invariants are preserved after the operation, i.e. so that future calls to our methods provide the user of the list class with the behavior they expect.



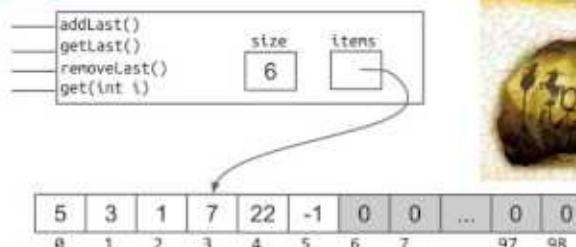
The Abstract vs. the Concrete



When we `removeLast()`, which memory boxes need to change? To what?

User's mental model: $\{5, 3, 1, 7, 22, -1\} \rightarrow \{5, 3, 1, 7, 22\}$

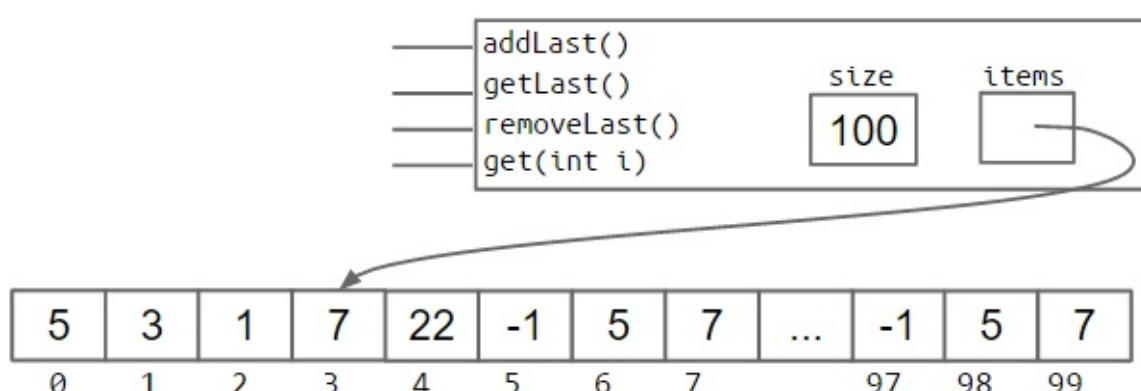
Actual truth:



[Video link](#)

Naive Resizing Arrays

Optional Exercise 2.5.3: Suppose we have an AList in the state shown in the figure below. What will happen if we call `addLast(11)`? What should we do about this problem?





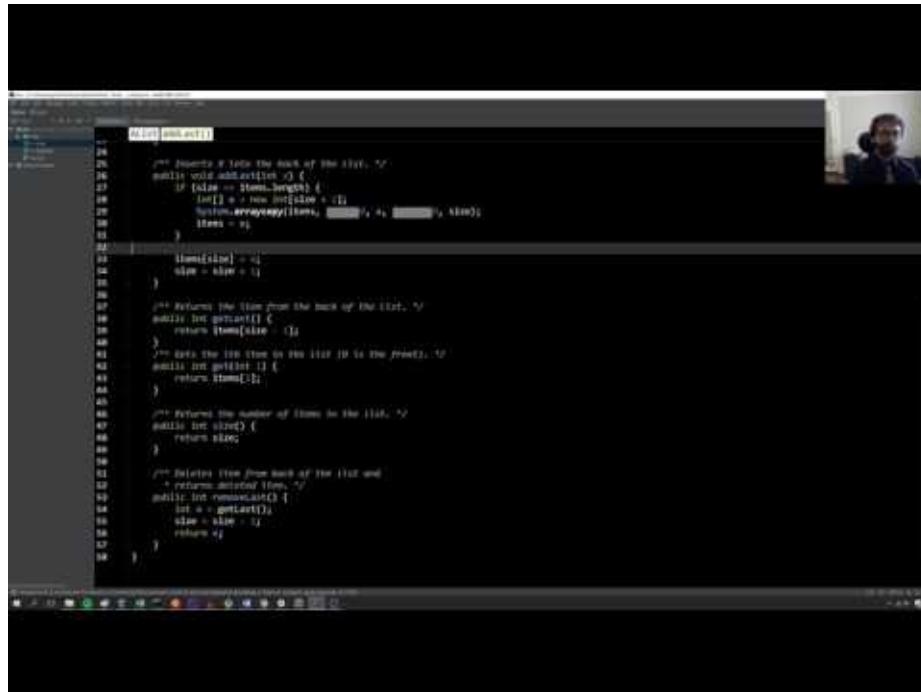
[Video link](#)

The answer, in Java, is that we simply build a new array that is big enough to accomodate the new data. For example, we can imagine adding the new item as follows:

```
int[] a = new int[size + 1];
System.arraycopy(items, 0, a, 0, size);
a[size] = 11;
items = a;
size = size + 1;
```

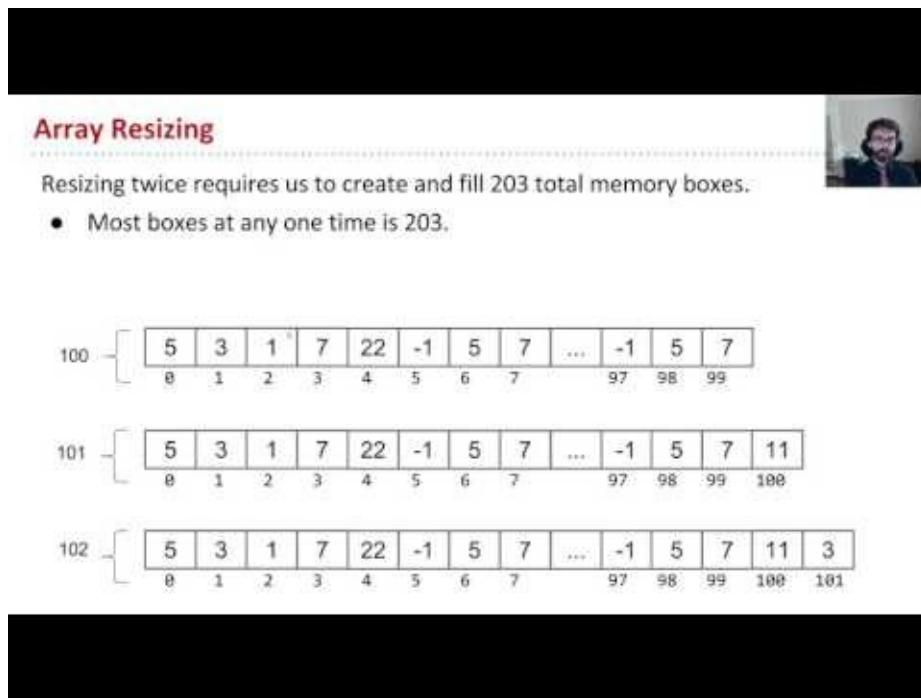
The process of creating a new array and copying items over is often referred to as "resizing". It's a bit of a misnomer since the array doesn't actually change size, we are just making a new one that has a bigger size.

Exercise 2.5.4: Try to implement the `addLast(int i)` method to work with resizing arrays.



[Video link](#)

Analyzing the Naive Resizing Array

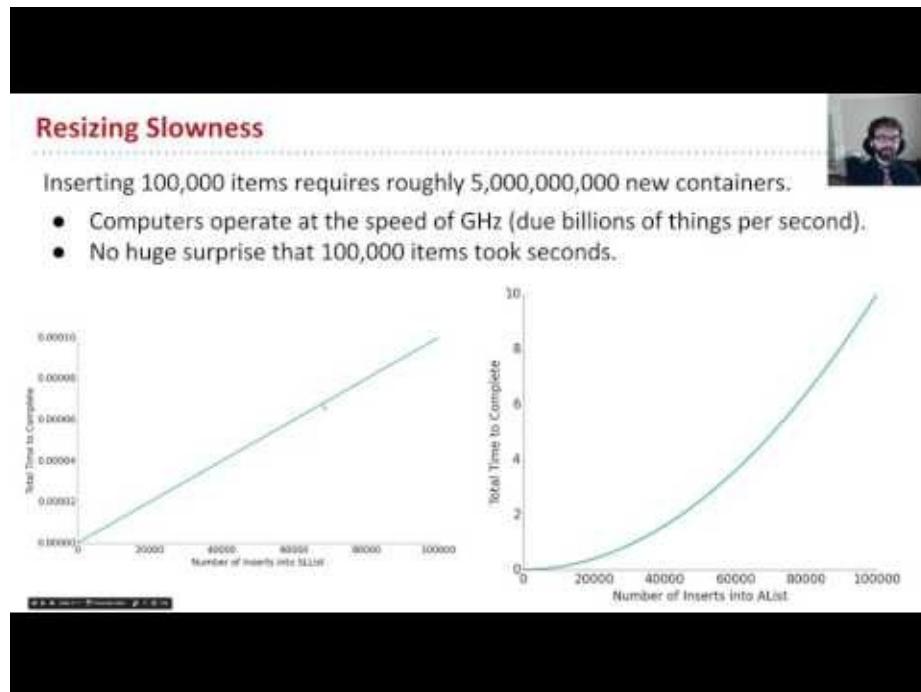


[Video link](#)

The approach that we attempted in the previous section has terrible performance. By running a simple computational experiment where we call `addLast` 100,000 times, we see that the `SLList` completes so fast that we can't even time it. By contrast our array based list takes several seconds.

To understand why, consider the following exercise:

Exercise 2.5.5: Suppose we have an array of size 100. If we call `insertBack` two times, how many total boxes will we need to create and fill throughout this entire process? How many total boxes will we have at any one time, assuming that garbage collection happens as soon as the last reference to an array is lost?

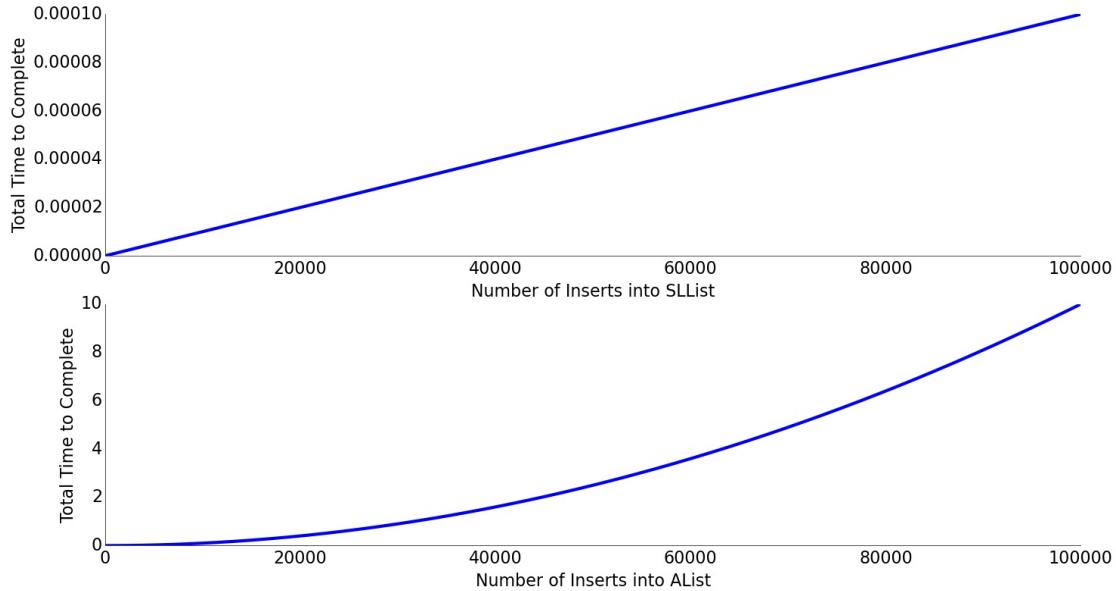


[Video link](#)

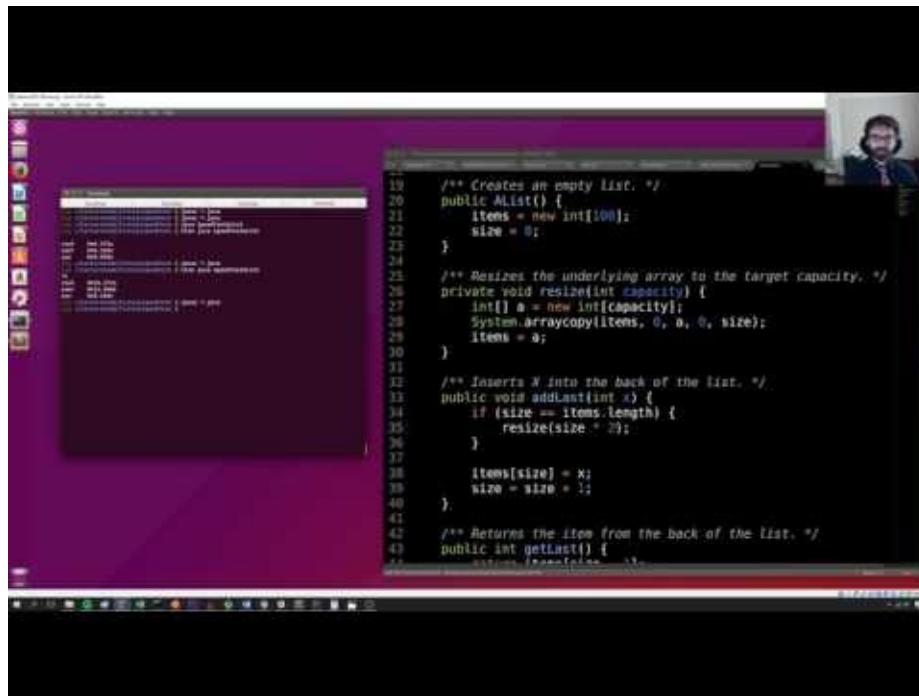
Exercise 2.5.6: Starting from an array of size 100, approximately how many memory boxes get created and filled if we call `addLast` 1,000 times?

Creating all those memory boxes and recopying their contents takes time. In the graph below, we plot total time vs. number of operations for an SLLList on the top, and for a naive array based list on the bottom. The SLLList shows a straight line, which means for each `add` operation, the list takes the same additional amount of time. This means each single operation takes constant time! You can also think of it this way: the graph is linear, indicating that each operation takes constant time, since the integral of a constant is a line.

By contrast, the naive array list shows a parabola, indicating that each operation takes linear time, since the integral of a line is a parabola. This has significant real world implications. For inserting 100,000 items, we can roughly compute how much longer by computing the ratio of N^2/N . Inserting 100,000 items into our array based list takes $(100,000^2)/100,000$ or 100,000 times as long. This is obviously unacceptable.



Geometric Resizing



[Video link](#)

We can fix our performance problems by growing the size of our array by a multiplicative amount, rather than an additive amount. That is, rather than **adding** a number of memory boxes equal to some resizing factor **RFACTOR** :

```

public void insertBack(int x) {
    if (size == items.length) {
        resize(size + RFACTOR);
    }
    items[size] = x;
    size += 1;
}

```

We instead resize by **multiplying** the number of boxes by `RFACTOR`.

```

public void insertBack(int x) {
    if (size == items.length) {
        resize(size * RFACTOR);
    }
    items[size] = x;
    size += 1;
}

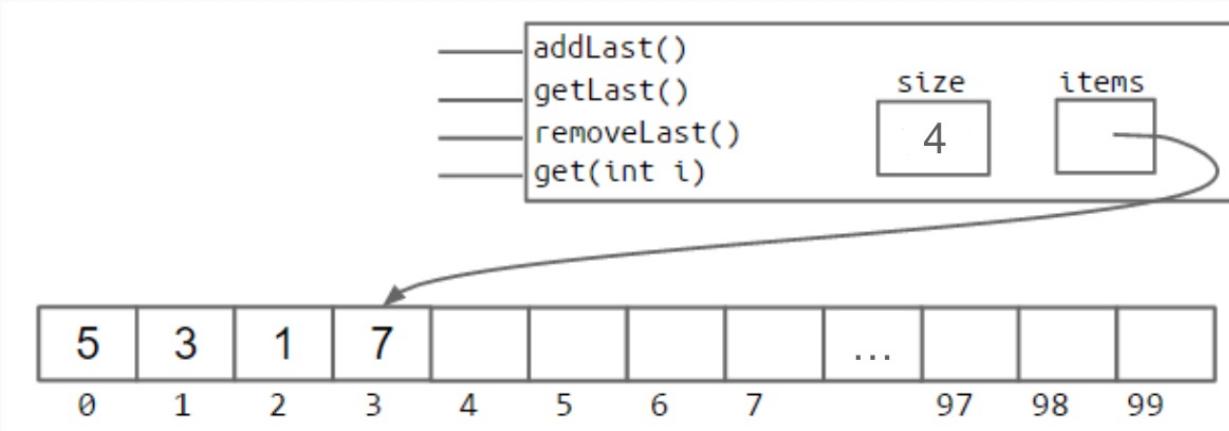
```

Repeating our computational experiment from before, we see that our new `AList` completes 100,000 inserts in so little time that we don't even notice. We'll defer a full analysis of why this happens until the final chapter of this book.

Memory Performance

Our `AList` is almost done, but we have one major issue. Suppose we insert 1,000,000,000 items, then later remove 990,000,000 items. In this case, we'll be using only 10,000,000 of our memory boxes, leaving 99% completely unused.

To fix this issue, we can also downsize our array when it starts looking empty. Specifically, we define a "usage ratio" R which is equal to the size of the list divided by the length of the `items` array. For example, in the figure below, the usage ratio is 0.04.



In a typical implementation, we halve the size of the array when R falls to less than 0.25.

Generic ALists



[Video link](#)

Just as we did before, we can modify our `AList` so that it can hold any data type, not just integers. To do this, we again use the special angle braces notation in our class and substitute our arbitrary type parameter for integer wherever appropriate. For example, below, we use `Glorp` as our type parameter.

There is one significant syntactical difference: Java does not allow us to create an array of generic objects due to an obscure issue with the way generics are implemented. That is, we cannot do something like:

```
Glorp[] items = new Glorp[8];
```

Instead, we have to use the awkward syntax shown below:

```
Glorp[] items = (Glorp []) new Object[8];
```

This will yield a compilation warning, but it's just something we'll have to live with. We'll discuss this in more details in a later chapter.

The other change we make is that we null out any items that we "delete". Whereas before, we had no reason to zero out elements that were deleted, with generic objects, we do want to null out references to the objects that we're storing. This is to avoid "loitering". Recall that Java only destroys objects when the last reference has been lost. If we fail to null out the reference, then Java will not garbage collect the objects that have been added to the list.

This is a subtle performance bug that you're unlikely to observe unless you're looking for it, but in certain cases could result in a significant wastage of memory.

What's next:

- [Discussion 3](#)
- [Lab2](#)
- [Project 1A](#)

3. Testing

Testing and Selection Sort

One of the most important skills an intermediate to advanced programmer can have is the ability to tell when your code is correct. In this chapter, we'll discuss how you can write tests to evaluate code correctness. Along the way, we'll also discuss an algorithm for sorting called Selection Sort.

A New Way



[Video link](#)

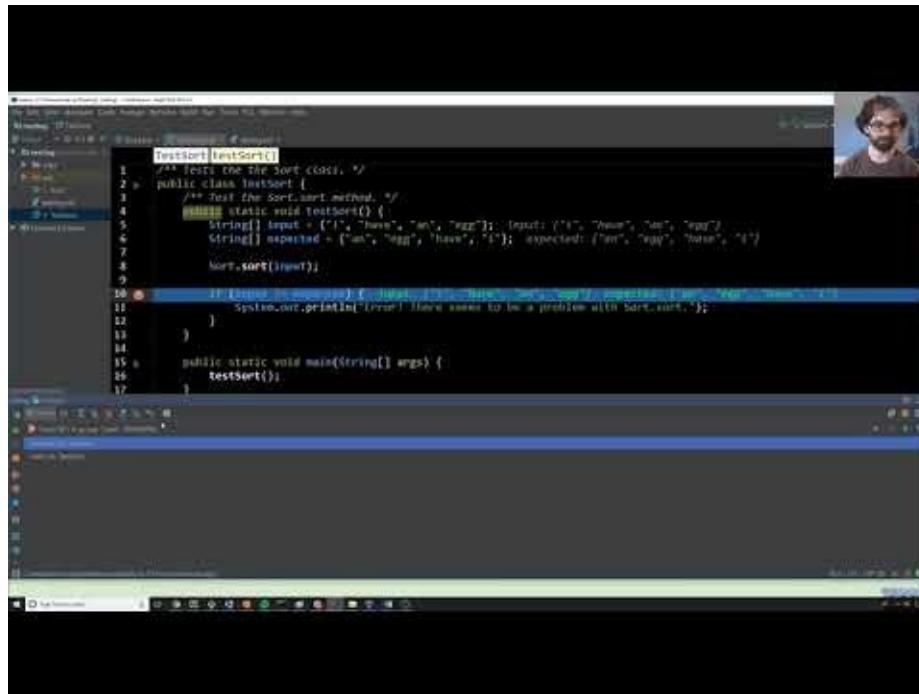
When you write a program, it may have errors. In a classroom setting, you gain confidence in your code's correctness through some combination of user interaction, code analysis, and autograder testing, with this last item being of the greatest importance in many cases, particularly as it is how you earn points.

Autograders, of course, are not magic. They are code that the instructors write that is fundamentally not all that different from the code that you are writing. In the real world, these tests are written by the programmers themselves, rather than some benevolent Josh-Hug-like third party.

In this chapter, we'll explore how we can write our own tests. Our goal will be to create a class called `Sort` that provides a method `sort(String[] x)` that destructively sorts the strings in the array `x`.

As a totally new way of thinking, we'll start by writing `testSort()` first, and only after we've finished the test, we'll move on to writing the actual sorting code.

Ad Hoc Testing



[Video link](#)

Writing a test for `Sort.sort` is relatively straightforward, albeit tedious. We simply need to create an input, call `sort`, and check that the output of the method is correct. If the output is not correct, we print out the first mismatch and terminate the test. For example, we might create a test class as follows:

```

public class TestSort {
    /** Tests the sort method of the Sort class. */
    public static void testSort() {
        String[] input = {"i", "have", "an", "egg"};
        String[] expected = {"an", "egg", "have", "i"};
        Sort.sort(input);
        for (int i = 0; i < input.length; i += 1) {
            if (!input[i].equals(expected[i])) {
                System.out.println("Mismatch in position " + i + ", expected: " + expe
cted + ", but got: " + input[i] + ".");
                break;
            }
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        testSort();
    }
}

```

We can test out our test by creating a blank `Sort.sort` method as shown below:

```

public class Sort {
    /** Sorts strings destructively. */
    public static void sort(String[] x) {
    }
}

```

If we run the `testSort()` method with this blank `Sort.sort` method, we'd get:

```
Mismatch in position 0, expected: an, but got: i.
```

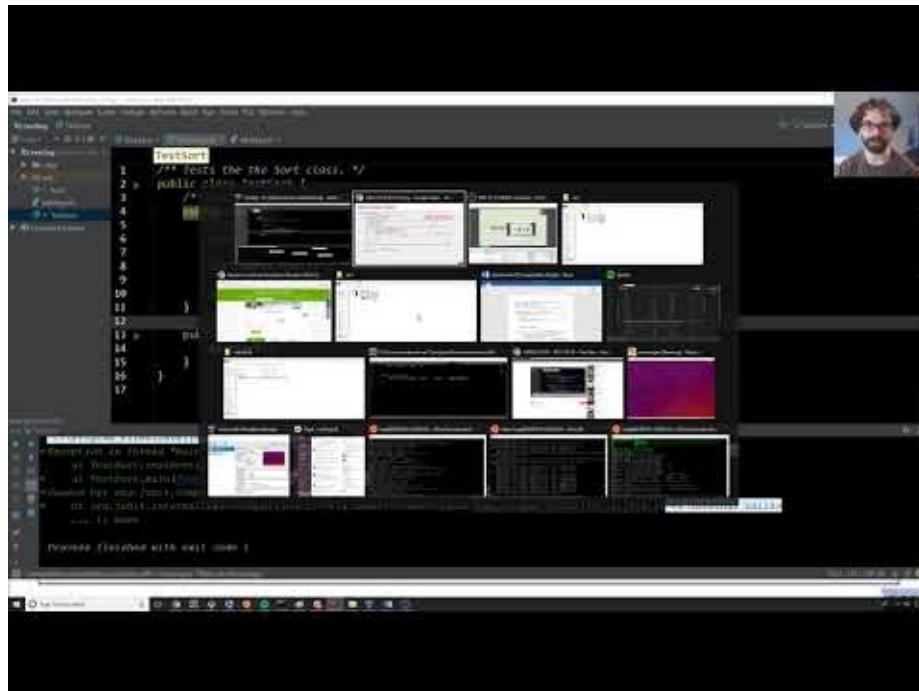
The fact that we're getting an error message is a good thing! This means our test is working. What's very interesting about this is that we've now created a little game for ourselves to play, where the goal is to modify the code for `Sort.sort` so that this error message no longer occurs. It's a bit of a psychological trick, but many programmers find the creation of these little mini-puzzles for themselves to be almost addictive.

In fact, this is a lot like the situation where you have an autograder for a class, and you find yourself hooked on the idea of getting the autograder to give you its love and approval. You now have the ability to create a judge for your code, whose esteem you can only win by completing the code correctly.

Important note: You may be asking "Why are you looping through the entire array? Why don't you just check if the arrays are equal using `==` ? ". The reason is, when we test for equality of two objects, we cannot simply use the `==` operator. The `==` operator compares the literal bits in the memory boxes, e.g. `input == expected` would test whether or not the addresses of `input` and `expected` are the same, not whether the values in the arrays are the same. Instead, we used a loop in `testSort`, and print out the first mismatch. You could also use the built-in method `java.util.Arrays.equals` instead of a loop.

While the single test above wasn't a ton of work, writing a suite of such *ad hoc* tests would be very tedious, as it would entail writing a bunch of different loops and print statements. In the next section, we'll see how the `org.junit` library saves us a lot of work.

JUnit Testing



[Video link](#)

The `org.junit` library provides a number of helpful methods and useful capabilities for simplifying the writing of tests. For example, we can replace our simple *ad hoc* test from above with:

```
public static void testSort() {
    String[] input = {"i", "have", "an", "egg"};
    String[] expected = {"an", "egg", "have", "i"};
    Sort.sort(input);
    org.junit.Assert.assertArrayEquals(expected, input);
}
```

This code is much simpler, and does more or less the exact same thing, i.e. if the arrays are not equal, it will tell us the first mismatch. For example, if we run `testSort()` on a `Sort.sort` method that does nothing, we'd get:

```
Exception in thread "main" arrays first differed at element [0]; expected:<[an]> but was:<[i]>
    at org.junit.internal.ComparisonCriteria.arrayEquals(ComparisonCriteria.java:55)
    at org.junit.Assert.internalArrayEquals(Assert.java:532)
    ...
...
```

While this output is a little uglier than our *ad hoc* test, we'll see at the very end of this chapter how to make it nicer.

Selection Sort



Back to Sorting: Selection Sort



Selection sorting a list of N items:

- Find the smallest item.
- Move it to the front.
- Selection sort the remaining N-1 items (without touching front item!).

6	3	7	2	8	1
1	3	7	2	8	6
1	2	7	3	8	6
1	2	3	7	8	6
1	2	3	6	8	7
1	2	3	6	7	8

As an aside: Can prove correctness of this sort using invariants.



[Video link](#)

Before we can write a `sort.sort` method, we need some algorithm for sorting. Perhaps the simplest sorting algorithm around is "selection sort." Selection sort consists of three steps:

- Find the smallest item.
- Move it to the front.
- Selection sort the remaining N-1 items (without touching the front item).

For example, suppose we have the array `{6, 3, 7, 2, 8, 1}`. The smallest item in this array is `1`, so we'd move the `1` to the front. There are two natural ways to do this: One is to stick the `1` at the front and slide all the numbers over, i.e. `{1, 6, 3, 7, 2, 8}`. However,

the much more efficient way is to simply swap the `1` with the old front (in this case `6`), yielding `{1, 3, 7, 2, 8, 6}`.

We'd simply repeat the same process for the remaining digits, i.e. the smallest item in `... 3, 7, 2, 8, 6}` is `2`. Swapping to the front, we get `{1, 2, 7, 3, 8, 6}`. Repeating until we've got a sorted array, we'd get `{1, 2, 3, 7, 8, 6}`, then `{1, 2, 3, 6, 8, 7}`, then finally `{1, 2, 3, 6, 7, 8}`.

We could mathematically prove the correctness of this sorting algorithm on any arrays by using the concept of invariants that was originally introduced in chapter 2.4, though we will not do so in this textbook. Before proceeding, try writing out your own short array of numbers and perform selection sort on it, so that you can make sure you get the idea.

Now that we know how selection sort works, we can write in a few short comments in our blank `Sort.sort` method to guide our thinking:

```
public class Sort {  
    /** Sorts strings destructively. */  
    public static void sort(String[] x) {  
        // find the smallest item  
        // move it to the front  
        // selection sort the rest (using recursion?)  
    }  
}
```

In the following sections, I will attempt to complete an implementation of selection sort. I'll do so in a way that resembles how a student might approach the problem, so **I'll be making a few intentional errors along the way**. These intentional errors are a good thing, as they'll help demonstrate the usefulness of testing. If you spot any of the errors while reading, don't worry, we'll eventually come around and correct them.

findSmallest



Back to Sorting: Selection Sort



Selection sorting a list of N items:

- Find the smallest item.
- Move it to the front.
- Selection sort the remaining N-1 items (without touching front item!).

Let's try implementing this.

- I'll try to simulate as closely as possible how I think students might approach this problem to show how TDD helps.

Not shown in details in these slides. See lecture video.

6	3	7	2	8	1
1	3	7	2	8	6
1	2	7	3	8	6
1	2	3	7	8	6
1	2	3	6	8	7
1	2	3	6	7	8



Video link

The most natural place to start is to write a method for finding the smallest item in a list. As with `Sort.sort`, we'll start by writing a test before we even complete the method. First, we'll create a dummy `findSmallest` method that simply returns some arbitrary value:

```
public class Sort {
    /** Sorts strings destructively. */
    public static void sort(String[] x) {
        // find the smallest item
        // move it to the front
        // selection sort the rest (using recursion?)
    }

    /** Returns the smallest string in x. */
    public static String findSmallest(String[] x) {
        return x[2];
    }
}
```

Obviously this is not a correct implementation, but we've chosen to defer actually thinking about how `findSmallest` works until after we've written a test. Using the `org.junit` library, adding such a test to our `TestSort` class is very easy, as shown below:

```

public class TestSort {
    ...
    public static void testFindSmallest() {
        String[] input = {"i", "have", "an", "egg"};
        String expected = "an";

        String actual = Sort.findSmallest(input);
        org.junit.Assert.assertEquals(expected, actual);
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        testFindSmallest(); // note: we changed this from testSort!
    }
}

```

As with `TestSort.testsорт`, we then run our `TestSort.testFindSmallest` method to make sure that it fails. When we run this test, we'll see that it actually passes, i.e. no message appears. This is because we just happened to hard code the correct return value `x[2]`. Let's modify our `findSmallest` method so that it returns something that is definitely incorrect:

```

/** Returns the smallest string in x. */
public static String findSmallest(String[] x) {
    return x[3];
}

```

After making this change, when we run `TestSort.testFindSmallest`, we'll get an error, which is a good thing:

```

Exception in thread "main" java.lang.AssertionError: expected:<[an]> but was:<[null]>
    at org.junit.Assert.failNotEquals(Assert.java:834)
    at TestSort.testFindSmallest(TestSort.java:9)
    at TestSort.main(TestSort.java:24)

```

As before, we've set up for ourselves a little game to play, where our goal is now to modify the code for `Sort.findSmallest` so that this error no longer appears. This is a smaller goal than getting `Sort.sort` to work, which might be even more addictive.

Side note: It might have seem rather contrived that I just happened to return the right value `x[2]`. However, when I was recording this lecture video, I actually did make this exact mistake without intending to do so!

Next we turn to actually writing `findSmallest`. This seems like it should be relatively straightforward. If you're a Java novice, you might end up writing code that looks something like this:

```
/** Returns the smallest string in x. */
public static String findSmallest(String[] x) {
    String smallest = x[0];
    for (int i = 0; i < x.length; i += 1) {
        if (x[i] < smallest) {
            smallest = x[i];
        }
    }
    return smallest;
}
```

However, this will yield the compilation error "< cannot be applied to 'java.lang.String'". The issue is that Java does not allow comparisons between Strings using the < operator.

When you're programming and get stuck on an issue like this that is easily describable, it's probably best to turn to a search engine. For example, we might search "less than strings Java" with Google. Such a search might yield a Stack Overflow post like [this one](#).

One of the popular answers for this post explains that the `str1.compareTo(str2)` method will return a negative number if `str1 < str2`, 0 if they are equal, and a positive number if `str1 > str2`.

Incorporating this into our code, we might end up with:

```
/** Returns the smallest string in x.
 * @source Got help with string compares from https://goo.gl/a7yBU5. */
public static String findSmallest(String[] x) {
    String smallest = x[0];
    for (int i = 0; i < x.length; i += 1) {
        int cmp = x[i].compareTo(smallest);
        if (cmp < 0) {
            smallest = x[i];
        }
    }
    return smallest;
}
```

Note that we've used a `@source` tag in order to cite our sources. I'm showing this by example for those of you who are taking 61B as a formal course. This is not a typical real world practice.

Since we are using syntax features that are totally new to us, we might lack confidence in the correctness of our `findSmallest` method. Luckily, we just wrote that test a little while ago. If we try running it, we'll see that nothing gets printed, which means our code is probably correct.

We can augment our test to increase our confidence by adding more test cases. For example, we might change `testFindSmallest` so that it reads as shown below:

```
public static void testFindSmallest() {
    String[] input = {"i", "have", "an", "egg"};
    String expected = "an";

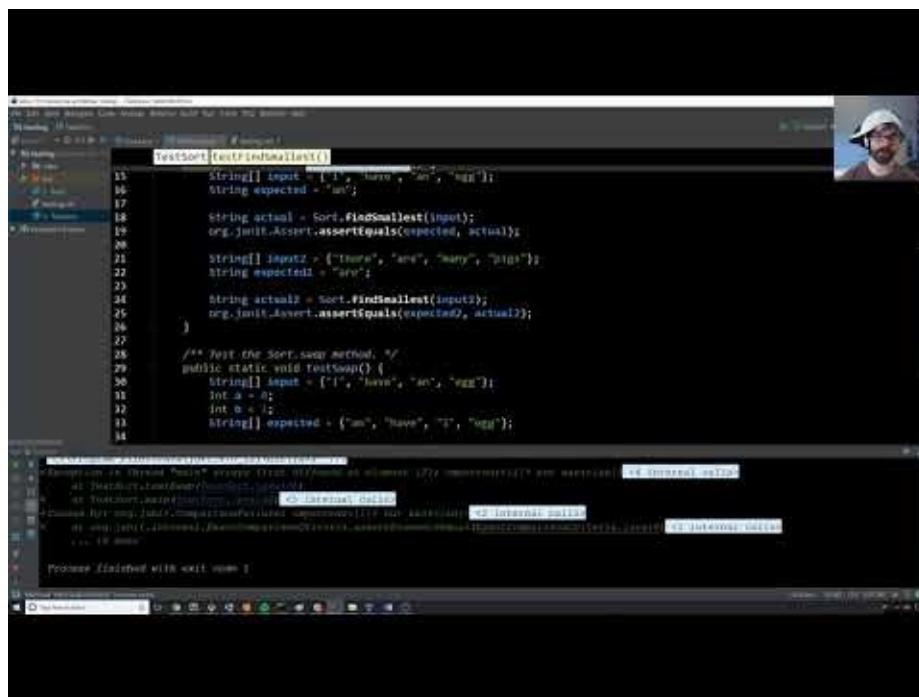
    String actual = Sort.findSmallest(input);
    org.junit.Assert.assertEquals(expected, actual);

    String[] input2 = {"there", "are", "many", "pigs"};
    String expected2 = "are";

    String actual2 = Sort.findSmallest(input2);
    org.junit.Assert.assertEquals(expected2, actual2);
}
```

Rerunning the test, we see that it still passes. We are not absolutely certain that it works, but we are much more certain that we would have been without any tests.

Swap



[Video link](#)

Looking at our `sort` method below, the next helper method we need to write is something to move an item to the front, which we'll call `swap`.

```
/** Sorts strings destructively. */
public static void sort(String[] x) {
    // find the smallest item
    // move it to the front
    // selection sort the rest (using recursion?)
}
```

Writing a `swap` method is very straightforward, and you've probably done so before. A correct implementation might look like:

```
public static void swap(String[] x, int a, int b) {
    String temp = x[a];
    x[a] = x[b];
    x[b] = temp;
}
```

However, for the moment, let's introduce an intentional error so that we can demonstrate the utility of testing. A more naive programmer might have done something like:

```
public static void swap(String[] x, int a, int b) {
    x[a] = x[b];
    x[b] = x[a];
}
```

Writing a test for this method is quite easy with the help of JUnit. An example test is shown below. Note that we have also edited the main method so that it calls `testSwap` instead of `testFindSmallest` or `testSort`.

```
public class TestSort {
    ...

    /** Test the Sort.swap method. */
    public static void testSwap() {
        String[] input = {"i", "have", "an", "egg"};
        int a = 0;
        int b = 2;
        String[] expected = {"an", "have", "i", "egg"};

        Sort.swap(input, a, b);
        org.junit.Assert.assertArrayEquals(expected, input);
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        testSwap();
    }
}
```

Running this test on our buggy `swap` yields an error, as we'd expect.

```
Exception in thread "main" arrays first differed in element [2]; expected:<[i]> but was:  
s:<[an]>  
at TestSort.testSwap(TestSort.java:36)
```

It's worth briefly noting that it is important that we call only `testSwap` and not `testSort` as well. For example, if our `main` method was as below, the entire `main` method will terminate execution as soon as `testSort` fails, and `testSwap` will never run:

```
public static void main(String[] args) {  
    testSort();  
    testFindSmallest();  
    testSwap();  
}
```

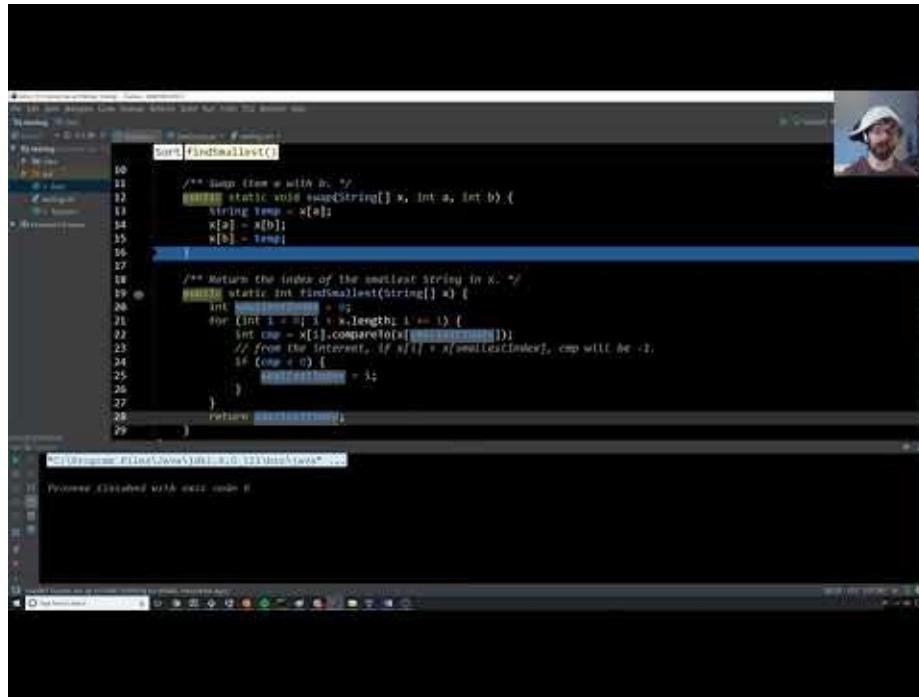
We will learn a more elegant way to deal with multiple tests at the end of this chapter that will avoid the need to manually specify which tests to run.

Now that we have a failing test, we can use it to help us debug. One way to do this is to set a breakpoint inside the `swap` method and use the visual debugging feature in IntelliJ. If you would like more information about and practice on debugging, check out [Lab2](#). Stepping through the code line-by-line makes it immediately clear what is wrong (see video or try it yourself), and we can fix it by updating our code to include a temporary variable as that the beginning of this section:

```
public static void swap(String[] x, int a, int b) {  
    String temp = x[a];  
    x[a] = x[b];  
    x[b] = temp;  
}
```

Rerunning the test, we see that it now passes.

Revising `findSmallest`



[Video link](#)

Now that we have multiple pieces of our method done, we can start trying to connect them up together to create a `sort` method.

```

/** Sorts strings destructively. */
public static void sort(String[] x) {
    // find the smallest item
    // move it to the front
    // selection sort the rest (using recursion?)
}

```

It's clear how to use our `findSmallest` and `swap` methods, but when we do so, we immediately realize there is a bit of a mismatch: `findSmallest` returns a `String`, and `swap` expects two indices.

```

/** Sorts strings destructively. */
public static void sort(String[] x) {
    // find the smallest item
    String smallest = findSmallest(x);

    // move it to the front
    swap(x, 0, smallest);

    // selection sort the rest (using recursion?)
}

```

In other words, what `findSmallest` should have been returning is the index of the smallest String, not the String itself. Making silly errors like this is normal and really easy to do, so don't sweat it if you find yourself doing something similar. Iterating on a design is part of the process of writing code.

Luckily, this new design can be easily changed. We simply need to adjust `findSmallest` to return an `int`, as shown below:

```
public static int findSmallest(String[] x) {
    int smallestIndex = 0;
    for (int i = 0; i < x.length; i += 1) {
        int cmp = x[i].compareTo(x[smallestIndex]);
        if (cmp < 0) {
            smallestIndex = i;
        }
    }
    return smallestIndex;
}
```

Since this is a non-trivial change, we should also update `testFindSmallest` and make sure that `findSmallest` still works.

```
public static void testFindSmallest() {
    String[] input = {"i", "have", "an", "egg"};
    int expected = 2;

    int actual = Sort.findSmallest(input);
    org.junit.Assert.assertEquals(expected, actual);

    String[] input2 = {"there", "are", "many", "pigs"};
    int expected2 = 1;

    int actual2 = Sort.findSmallest(input);
    org.junit.Assert.assertEquals(expected2, actual2);
}
```

After modifying `Testsort` so that this test is run, and running `TestSort.main`, we see that our code passes the tests. Now, revising `sort`, we can fill in the first two steps of our sorting algorithm.

```
/** Sorts strings destructively. */
public static void sort(String[] x) {
    // find the smallest item
    // move it to the front
    // selection sort the rest (using recursion?)
    int smallestIndex = findSmallest(x);
    swap(x, 0, smallestIndex);
}
```

All that's left is to somehow selection sort the remaining items, perhaps using recursion. We'll tackle this in the next section. In the meantime, in the figure below, we have detailed the evolution of our design. It's worth noting how we created tests first, and used these to build confidence that the actual methods work before we ever tried to use them for anything. This is an incredibly important idea, and one that will serve you well if you decide to adopt it.

FIGURECOMINGSOON

Recursive Helper Methods

Back to Sorting: Selection Sort

Selection sorting a list of N items:

- Find the smallest item!
- Move it to the front
- Selection sort the rest of the list (recursively).

Let's try implementing this:

- I'll try to simulate what happens when students make mistakes. TDD helps.

7	2	8	1		
7	2	8	6		
7	3	8	5		
3	7	8	6		
1	2	3	6	8	7
1	2	3	6	7	8

Not shown in details in these slides. See lecture video.

[Video link](#)

To begin this section, consider how you might make the recursive call needed to complete

sort :

```
/** Sorts strings destructively. */
public static void sort(String[] x) {
    int smallestIndex = findSmallest(x);
    swap(x, 0, smallestIndex);
    // recursive call??
}
```

For those of you who are used to a language like Python, it might be tempting to try and use something like slice notation, e.g.

```
/** Sorts strings destructively. */
public static void sort(String[] x) {
    int smallestIndex = findSmallest(x);
    swap(x, 0, smallestIndex);
    sort(x[1:])
}
```

However, there is no such thing in Java as a reference to a sub-array, i.e. we can't just pass the address of the next item in the array.

This problem of needing to consider only a subset of a larger array is very common. A typical solution is to create a private helper method that has an additional parameter (or parameters) that delineate which part of the array to consider. For example, we might write a private helper method also called `sort` that consider only the items starting with item

`start`.

```
/** Sorts strings destructively starting from item start. */
private static void sort(String[] x, int start) {
    // TODO
}
```

Unlike our public `sort` method, it's relatively straightforward to use recursion now that we have the additional parameter `start`, as shown below. We'll test this method in the next section.

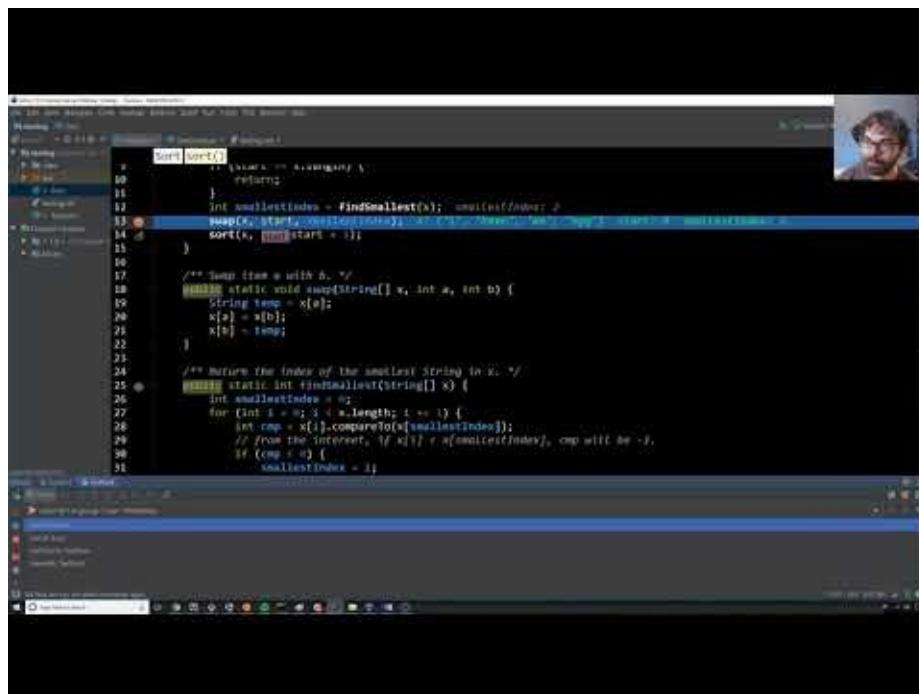
```
/** Sorts strings destructively starting from item start. */
private static void sort(String[] x, int start) {
    int smallestIndex = findSmallest(x);
    swap(x, start, smallestIndex);
    sort(x, start + 1);
}
```

Now that we have a helper method, we need to set up the correct original call. If we set the `start` to 0, we effectively sort the entire array.

```
/** Sorts strings destructively. */
public static void sort(String[] x) {
    sort(x, 0);
}
```

This approach is quite common when trying to use recursion on a data structure that is not inherently recursive, e.g. arrays.

Debugging and Completing Sort



[Video link](#)

Running our `testSort` method, we immediately run into a problem:

```
Exception in thread "main" java.lang.ArrayIndexOutOfBoundsException: 4
at Sort.swap(Sort.java:16)
```

Using the Java debugger, we see that the problem is that somehow `start` is reaching the value 4. Stepping through the code carefully (see video above), we find that the issue is that we forgot to include a base case in our recursive `sort` method. Fixing this is straightforward:

```
/** Sorts strings destructively starting from item start. */
private static void sort(String[] x, int start) {
    if (start == x.length) {
        return;
    }
    int smallestIndex = findSmallest(x);
    swap(x, start, smallestIndex);
    sort(x, start + 1);
}
```

Rerunning this test again, we get another error:

```
Exception in thread "main" arrays first differed at element [0];
expected<[an]> bit was:<[have]>
```

Again, with judicious use of the IntelliJ debugger (see video), we can identify a line of code whose result does not match our expectations. Of note is the fact that I debugged the code at a higher level of abstraction than you might have otherwise, which I achieve by using `Step Over` more than `Step Into`. As discussed in lab 3, debugging at a higher level of abstraction saves you a lot of time and energy, by allowing you to compare the results of entire function calls with your expectation.

Specifically, we find that when sorting the last 3 (out of 4) items, the `findSmallest` method is giving as the 0th item ("an") rather than the 3rd item ("egg") when called on the input `{"an", "have", "i", "egg"}`. Looking carefully at the definition of `findSmallest`, this behavior is not a surprise, since `findSmallest` looks at the entire array, not just the items starting from position `start`. This sort of design flaw is very common, and writing tests and using the debugger is a great way to go about fixing them.

To fix our code, we revise `findSmallest` so that it takes a second parameter `start`, i.e. `findSmallest(String[] x, int start)`. In this way, we ensure that we're finding the smallest item only out of the last however many are still unsorted. The revision is as shown below:

```
public static int findSmallest(String[] x, int start) {
    int smallestIndex = start;
    for (int i = start; i < x.length; i += 1) {
        int cmp = x[i].compareTo(x[smallestIndex]);
        if (cmp < 0) {
            smallestIndex = i;
        }
    }
    return smallestIndex;
}
```

Given that we've made a significant change to one of our building blocks, i.e. `findSmallest`, we should ensure that our changes are correct.

We first modify `testFindSmallest` so that it uses our new parameter, as shown below:

```
public static void testFindSmallest() {
    String[] input = {"i", "have", "an", "egg"};
    int expected = 2;

    int actual = Sort.findSmallest(input, 0);
    org.junit.Assert.assertEquals(expected, actual);

    String[] input2 = {"there", "are", "many", "pigs"};
    int expected2 = 2;

    int actual2 = Sort.findSmallest(input2, 2);
    org.junit.Assert.assertEquals(expected2, actual2);
}
```

We then modify `TestSort.main` so that it runs `testFindSmallest`. This test passes, strongly suggesting that our revisions to `findSmallest` were correct.

We next modify `Sort.sort` so that it uses the new `start` parameter in `findSmallest`:

```
/** Sorts strings destructively starting from item start. */
private static void sort(String[] x, int start) {
    if (start == x.length) {
        return;
    }
    int smallestIndex = findSmallest(x, start);
    swap(x, start, smallestIndex);
    sort(x, start + 1);
}
```

We then modify `TestSort` so that it runs `TestSort.sort` and voila, the method works. We are done! You have now seen the "new way" from the beginning of this lecture, which we'll reflect on for the remainder of this chapter.

Reflections on the Development Process

And We're Done!



Often, development is an incremental process that involves lots of task switching and on the fly design modification.

Tests provide stability and scaffolding.

- Provide confidence in basic units and mitigate possibility of breaking them.
- Help you focus on one task at a time.

In larger projects, tests also allow you to safely **refactor**! Sometimes code gets ugly, necessitating redesign and rewrites (see project 2).

One remaining problem: Sure was annoying to have to constantly edit which tests were running. Let's take care of that.



[Video link](#)

When you're writing and debugging a program, you'll often find yourself switching between different contexts. Trying to hold too much in your brain at once is a recipe for disaster at worst, and slow progress at best.

Having a set of automated tests helps reduce this cognitive load. For example, we were in the middle of writing `sort` when we realized there was a bug in `findSmallest`. We were able to switch contexts to consider `findSmallest` and establish that it was correct using our `testFindSmallest` method, and then switch back to `sort`. This is in sharp contrast to a more naive approach where you would simply be calling `sort` over and over and trying to figure out if the behavior of the overall algorithm suggests that the `findSmallest` method is correct.

As an analogy, you could test that a parachute's ripcord works by getting in an airplane, taking off, jumping out, and pulling the ripcord and seeing if the parachute comes out. However, you could also just pull it on the ground and see what happens. So, too, is it unnecessary to use `sort` to try out `findSmallest`.

As mentioned earlier in this chapter, tests also allow you to gain confidence in the basic pieces of your program, so that if something goes wrong, you have a better idea of where to start looking.

Lastly, tests make it easier to refactor your code. Suppose you decide to rewrite `findSmallest` so that it is faster or more readable. We can safely do so by making our desired changes and seeing if the tests still work.

Better JUnit

Better JUnit



The messages output by JUnit are kind of ugly, and invoking each test manually is annoying.

New Syntax #2 (just trust me):

- Annotate each test with `@org.junit.Test`.
- Change all test methods to non-static. ↪
- Use a JUnit runner to run all tests and tabulate results.
 - IntelliJ provides a default runner/renderer. OK to delete main.
 - If you want to use the command line instead, see the jh61b runner in the lab 3 supplement. Not preferred.
 - Rendered output is easier to read, no need to manually invoke tests!

Yes this is weird, as it implies you'd be instantiating TestSort.java. In fact, JUnit runners do this. I don't know why.

There is a lot of black magic happening here! Just accept it all for now.

[Video link](#)

First, let's reflect on the new syntax we've seen today, namely

`org.junit.Assert.assertEquals(expected, actual)`. This method (with a very long name) tests that `expected` and `actual` are equal, and if they are not, terminates the program with a verbose error message.

JUnit has many more such methods other than `assertEquals`, such as `assertFalse`, `assertNotNull`, `fail`, and so forth, and they can be found in the official [JUnit documentation](#). JUnit also has many other complex features we will not describe or teach in 61B, though you're free to use them.

While JUnit certainly improved things, our test code from before was a bit clumsy in several ways. In the remainder of this section, we'll talk about two major enhancements you can make so that your code is cleaner and easier to use. These enhancements will seem very mysterious from a syntax point of view, so just copy what we're doing for now, and we'll explain some (but not all) of it in a later chapter.

The first enhancement is to use what is known as a "test annotation". To do this, we:

- Precede each method with `@org.junit.Test` (no semi-colon).
- Change each test method to be non-static.
- Remove our `main` method from the `TestSort` class.

Once we've done these three things, if we re-run our code in JUnit using the Run->Run command, all of the tests execute without having to be manually invoked. This annotation based approach has several advantages:

- No need to manually invoke tests.
- All tests are run, not just the ones we specify.
- If one test fails, the others still run.
- A count of how many tests were run and how many passed is provided.
- The error messages on a test failure are much nicer looking.
- If all tests pass, we get a nice message and a green bar appears, rather than simply getting no output.

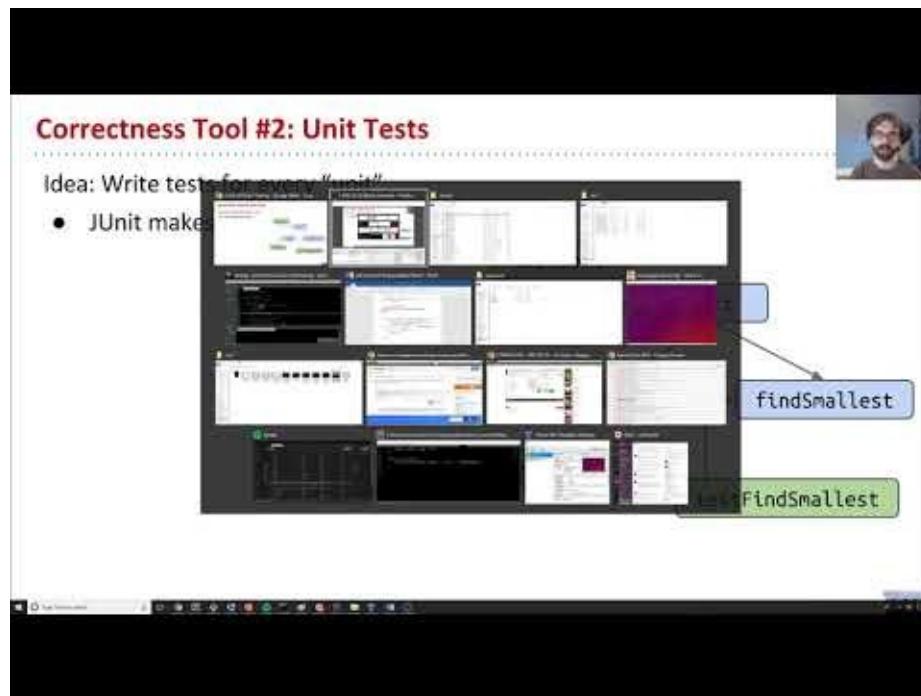
The second enhancement will let us use shorter names for some of the very lengthy method names, as well as the annotation name. Specifically, we'll use what is known as an "import statement".

We first add the import statement `import org.junit.Test;` to the top of our file. After doing this, we can replace all instances of `@org.junit.Test` with simply `@Test`.

We then add our second import statement `import static org.junit.Assert.*`. After doing this, anywhere we can omit anywhere we had `org.junit.Assert.`. For example, we can replace `org.junit.Assert.assertEquals(expected2, actual2);` with simply `assertEquals(expected2, actual2);`

We will explain exactly why import statements are in a later lecture. For now, just use and enjoy.

Testing Philosophy



[Video link](#)

No text provided. Video only.

What's next?

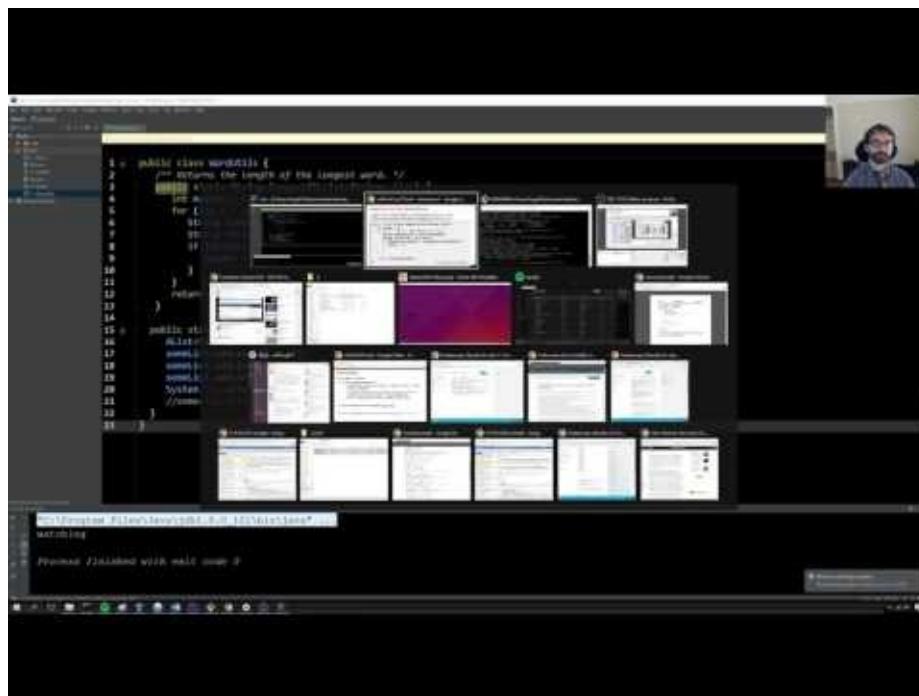
- [Project 1b](#)

The Problem

Recall the two list classes we created last week: `SLList` and `AList`. If you take a look at their documentation, you'll notice that they are very similar. In fact, all of their supporting methods are the same!

Suppose we want to write a class `Wordutils` that includes functions we can run on lists of words, including a method that calculates the longest string in an `SLList`.

Exercise 4.1.1. Try writing this method by yourself. The method should take in an `SLList` of strings and return the longest string in the list.



[Video link](#)

Here is the method that we came up with.

```
public static String longest(SLList<String> list) {
    int maxDex = 0;
    for (int i = 0; i < list.size(); i += 1) {
        String longestString = list.get(maxDex);
        String thisString = list.get(i);
        if (thisString.length() > longestString.length()) {
            maxDex = i;
        }
    }
    return list.get(maxDex);
}
```

How do we make this method work for AList as well?

All we really have to do is change the method's signature: the parameter

```
SLList<String> list
```

should be changed to

```
AList<String> list
```

Now we have two methods in our `WordUtils` class with exactly the same method name.

```
public static String longest(SLList<String> list)
```

and

```
public static String longest(AList<String> list)
```

This is actually allowed in Java! It's something called *method overloading*. When you call `WordUtils.longest`, Java knows which one to run according to what kind of parameter you supply it. If you supply it with an AList, it will call the AList method. Same with an SLList.

It's nice that Java is smart enough to know how to deal with two of the same methods for different types, but overloading has several downsides:

- It's super repetitive and ugly, because you now have two virtually identical blocks of code.
- It's more code to maintain, meaning if you want to make a small change to the `longest` method such as correcting a bug, you need to change it in the method for each type of list.
- If we want to make more list types, we would have to copy the method for every new list class.

Hypernyms, Hyponyms, and Interface Inheritance

Hyperonyms

Washing your poodle:
 1. Brush your poodle before a bath. ...
 2. Use lukewarm water. ...
 3. Talk to your poodle in a calm voice.
 4. Use poodle shampoo.
 5. Rinse well.
 6. Air-dry.
 7. Reward your poodle.

Washing your malamute:
 1. Brush your malamute before a bath. ...
 2. Use lukewarm water. ...
 3. Talk to your malamute in a calm voice.
 4. Use malamute shampoo.
 5. Rinse well.
 6. Air-dry.
 7. Reward your malamute.

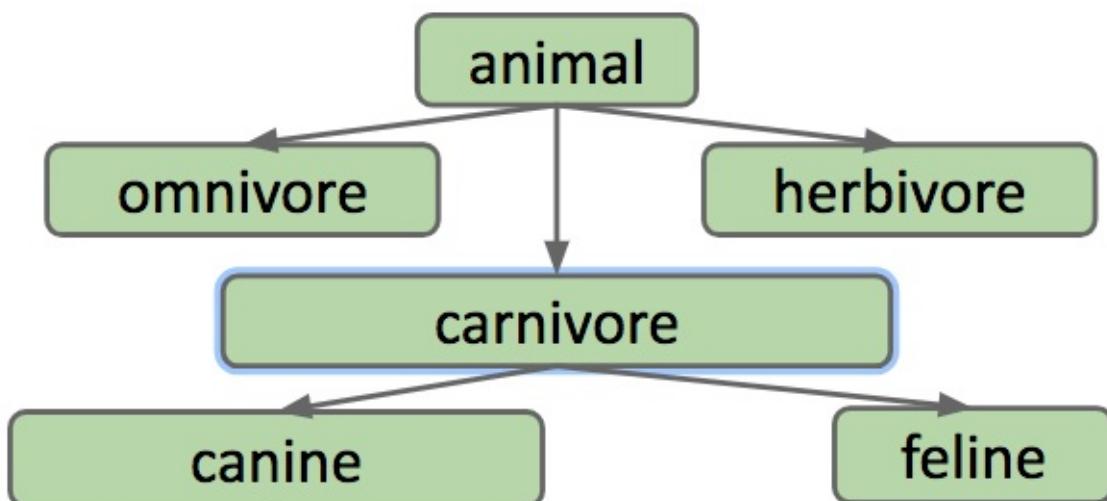
[Video link](#)

In the English language and life in general, there exist logical hierarchies to words and objects.

Dog is what is called a *hyperonym* of poodle, malamute, husky, etc. In the reverse direction, poodle, malamute, and husky, are *hyponyms* of dog.

These words form a hierarchy of "is-a" relationships:

- a poodle "is-a" dog
- a dog "is-a" canine
- a canine "is-a" carnivore
- a carnivore "is-an" animal



Step 1: Defining a List61B

We'll use the new keyword **interface** instead of **class** to define a List61B.

- Idea: Interface is a specification of what a List is able to do, not how to do it.

```
public interface List61B<Item> {
    public void addFirst(Item x);
    public void addLast(Item y);
    public Item getFirst();
    public Item getLast();
    public Item removeLast();
    public Item get(int i);
    public void insert(Item x, int position);
    public int size();
}
```

List61B

[Video link](#)

The same hierarchy goes for SLLists and ALISTS! SLList and ALIST are both hyponyms of a more general list.

We will formalize this relationship in Java: if a SLList is a hyponym of List61B, then the SLList class is a **subclass** of the List61B class and the List61B class is a **superclass** of the SLList class.

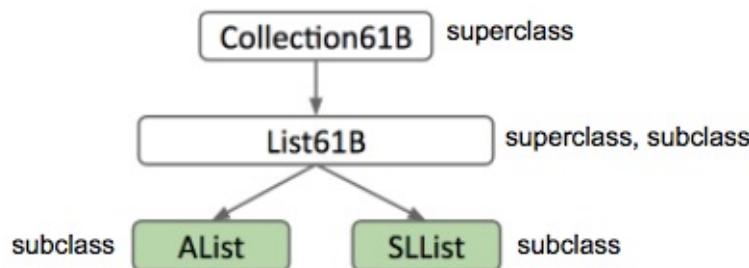


Figure 4.1.1

In Java, in order to express this hierarchy, we need to do **two things**:

- Step 1: Define a type for the general list hypernym -- we will choose the name List61B.
- Step 2: Specify that SLList and ALIST are hyponyms of that type.

The new List61B is what Java calls an **interface**. It is essentially a contract that specifies what a list must be able to do, but it doesn't provide any implementation for those behaviors. Can you think of why?

Here is our List61B interface. At this point, we have satisfied the first step in establishing the relationship hierarchy: creating a hypernym.

```

public interface List61B<Item> {
    public void addFirst(Item x);
    public void addLast(Item y);
    public Item getFirst();
    public Item getLast();
    public Item removeLast();
    public Item get(int i);
    public void insert(Item x, int position);
    public int size();
}

```

Now, to complete step 2, we need to specify that AList and SLList are hyponyms of the List61B class. In Java, we define this relationship in the class definition.

We will add to

```
public class AList<Item> {...}
```

a relationship-defining word: implements.

```
public class AList<Item> implements List61B<Item>{...}
```

`implements List61B<Item>` is essentially a promise. AList is saying "I promise I will have and define all the attributes and behaviors specified in the List61B interface"

Now we can edit our `longest` method in `Wordutils` to take in a List61B. Because AList and SLList share an "is-a" relationship.

Overriding

Method Overriding vs. Overloading



If a "subclass" has a method with the exact same signature as in the "superclass", we say the subclass **overrides** the method.

- Animal's subclass Pig overrides the `makeNoise()` method.
- Methods with the same name but different signatures are **overloaded**.

```
public interface Animal {
    public void makeNoise();
}
```

```
public class Pig implements Animal {
    public void makeNoise() {
        System.out.print("oink");
    }
}
```

Pig overrides `makeNoise()`

```
public class Dog implements Animal {
    public void makeNoise(Dog x) {
        ...
    }
}
```

`makeNoise` is overloaded

```
public class Math {
    public int abs(int a)
    public double abs(double a)
}
```

`abs` is overloaded

[Video link](#)

We promised we would implement the methods specified in List61B in the AList and SLLList classes, so let's go ahead and do that.

When implementing the required functions in the subclass, it's useful (and actually required in 61B) to include the `@override` tag right on top of the method signature. Here, we have done that for just one method.

```
@Override  
public void addFirst(Item x) {  
    insert(x, 0);  
}
```

It is good to note that even if you don't include this tag, you *are still* overriding the method. So technically, you don't *have* to include it. However, including the tag acts as a safeguard for you as the programmer by alerting the compiler that you intend to override this method. Why would this be helpful you ask? Well, it's kind of like having a proofreader! The compiler will tell you if something goes wrong in the process.

Say you want to override the `addLast` method. What if you make a typo and accidentally write `addLsat`? If you don't include the `@Override` tag, then you might not catch the mistake, which could make debugging a more difficult and painful process. Whereas if you include `@Override`, the compiler will stop and prompt you to fix your mistakes before your program even runs.

Interface Inheritance

Copying the Bits

Two seemingly contradictory facts:

- #1: When you set `x = y` or pass a parameter, you're just copying the bits.
- #2: A memory box can only hold 64 bit addresses for the appropriate type.
 - e.g. `String x` can never hold the 64 bit address of a `Dog`.

```

public static String longest(List61B<String> list) {
    int maxDex = 0;
    for (int i = 0; i < list.size(); i += 1)
    ...
}

public static void main(String[] args) {
    SLList<String> s1 = new SLList<String>();
    s1.insertBack("horse");
    WordUtils.longest(s1);
}

```

How can we copy the bits in `s1` to `list`?

[Video link](#)

Interface Inheritance refers to a relationship in which a subclass inherits all the methods/behaviors of the superclass. As in the `List61B` class we defined in the **Hyponyms and Hypernyms** section, the interface includes all the method signatures, but not implementations. It's up to the subclass to actually provide those implementations.

This inheritance is also multi-generational. This means if we have a long lineage of superclass/subclass relationships like in **Figure 4.1.1**, `AList` not only inherits the methods from `List61B` but also every other class above it all the way to the highest superclass AKA `AList` inherits from `Collection`.

GRoE

Recall the Golden Rule of Equals we introduced in the first chapter. This means whenever we make an assignment `a = b`, we copy the bits from `b` into `a`, with the requirement that `b` is the same type as `a`. You can't assign `Dog b = 1` or `Dog b = new Cat()` because `1` is not a `Dog` and neither is `Cat`.

Let's try to apply this rule to the `longest` method we wrote previously in this chapter.

`public static String longest(List61B<String> list)` takes in a `List61B`. We said that this could take in `AList` and `SLList` as well, but how is that possible since `AList` and `List61B` are different classes? Well, recall that `AList` shares an "is-a" relationship with `List61B`, Which means an `AList` should be able to fit into a `List61B` box!

Exercise 4.1.2 Do you think the code below will compile? If so, what happens when it runs?

```

public static void main(String[] args) {
    List61B<String> someList = new SLList<String>();
    someList.addFirst("elk");
}

```

Here are possible answers:

- Will not compile.
- Will compile, but will cause an error on the `new` line
- When it runs, an SLList is created and its address is stored in the `someList` variable, but it crashes on `someList.addFirst()` since the `List` class doesn't implement `addFirst`;
- When it runs, and SLList is created and its address is stored in the `someList` variable. Then the string "elk" is inserted into the SLList referred to by `addFirst`.

Implementation Inheritance

Copying the Bits

Two seemingly contradictory facts:

- #1: When you set `x = y` or pass a parameter, you're just copying the bits.
- #2: A memory box can only hold 64 bit addresses for the appropriate type.
 - e.g. `String x` can never hold the 64 bit address of a `Dog`.

```

public static String longest(List61B<String> list) {
    int maxDex = 0;
    for (int i = 0; i < list.size(); i += 1)
    ...
}

public static void main(String[] args) {
    SLList<String> s1 = new SLList<String>();
    s1.insertBack("horse");
    WordUtils.longest(s1);
}

```

How can we copy the bits in `s1` to `list`?

[Video link](#)

Previously, we had an interface `List61B` that only had method headers identifying **what** `List61B`'s should do. But, now we will see that we can write methods in `List61B` that already have their implementation filled out. These methods identify **how** hypernyms of `List61B` should behave.

In order to do this, you must include the `default` keyword in the method signature.

If we define this method in `List61B`

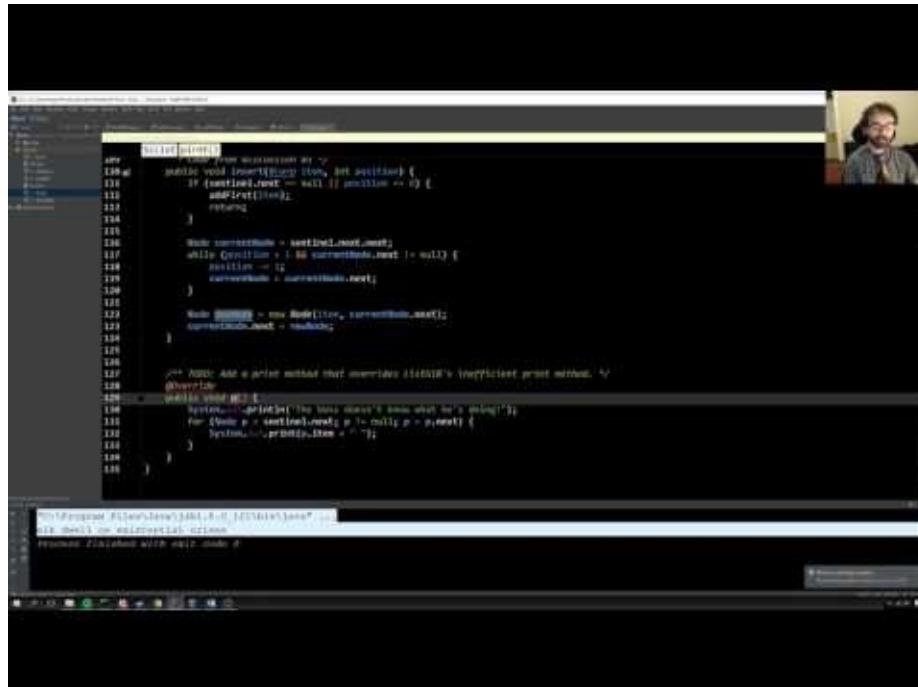
```

default public void print() {
    for (int i = 0; i < size(); i += 1) {
        System.out.print(get(i) + " ");
    }
    System.out.println();
}

```

Then everything that implements the List61B class can use the method!

However, there is one small inefficiency in this method. Can you catch it?



[Video link](#)

For an SLLList, the `get` method needs to jump through the entirety of the list. during each call. It's much better to just print while jumping through!

We want SLLList to print a different way than the way specified in its interface. To do this, we need to override it. In SLLList, we implement this method;

```

@Override
public void print() {
    for (Node p = sentinel.next; p != null; p = p.next) {
        System.out.print(p.item + " ");
    }
}

```

Now, whenever we call `print()` on an SLLList, it will call this method instead of the one in List61B.

Static Type vs. Dynamic Type



Every variable in Java has a "compile-time type", a.k.a. "static type".

- This is the type specified at **declaration**. Never changes!

Variables also have a "run-time type", a.k.a. "dynamic type".

- This is the type specified at **instantiation** (e.g. when using `new`).
- Equal to the type of the object being pointed at.

```
public static void main(String[] args) {
    LivingThing lt1;
    lt1 = new Fox();
    Animal a1 = lt1;
    -- Fox h1 = a1;
    lt1 = new Squid();
```

	Static Type	Dynamic Type
lt1	LivingThing	Fox
a1	Animal	Fox
h1	Fox	Fox

Video link

You may be wondering, how does Java know which `print()` to call? Good question. Java is able to do this due to something called "dynamic method selection".

We know that variables in java have a type.

```
List61B<String> lst = new SLLList<String>();
```

In the above declaration and instantiation, `lst` is of type "List61B". This is called the "static type"

However, the objects themselves have types as well. the object that `lst` points to is of type `SLLList`. Although this object is intrinsically an `SLLList` (since it was declared as such), it is also a `List61B`, because of the "is-a" relationship we explored earlier. But, because the object itself was instantiated using the `SLLList` constructor, We call this its "dynamic type".

Aside: the name "dynamic type" is actually quite semantic in its origin! Should `lst` be reassigned to point to an object of another type, say a `AList` object, `lst`'s dynamic type would now be `AList` and not `SLLList`! It's dynamic because it changes based on the type of the object it's currently referring to.

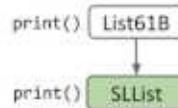
When Java runs a method that is overriden, it searches for the appropriate method signature in it's **dynamic type** and runs it.

IMPORTANT: This does not work for overloaded methods!

Overloading vs. Overriding

Dynamic method selection only happens for **overridden** methods.

- When instance method of subtype overrides some method in supertype.
- Example: `makeNoise` or `print`



Dynamic method selection does not happen for **overloaded** methods:

- When some other class has two methods, one for the supertype and one for the subtype.
- Example: `peek(SLLList)` vs. `peek(List61B)`



See guerrilla section and discussion for more practice.

Video link

Say there are two methods in the same class

```

public static void peek(List61B<String> list) {
    System.out.println(list.getLast());
}
public static void peek(SLLList<String> list) {
    System.out.println(list.getFirst());
}
  
```

and you run this code

```

SLLList<String> SP = new SLLList<String>();
List61B<String> LP = SP;
SP.addLast("elk");
SP.addLast("are");
SP.addLast("cool");
peek(SP);
peek(LP);
  
```

The first call to `peek()` will use the second `peek` method that takes in an `SLLList`. The second call to `peek()` will use the first `peek` method which takes in a `List61B`. This is because the only distinction between two overloaded methods is the types of the parameters. When Java checks to see which method to call, it checks the **static type** and calls the method with the parameter of the same type.

Interface vs. Implementation Inheritance



Interface Inheritance (a.k.a. what):

- Allows you to generalize code in a powerful, simple way.

Implementation Inheritance (a.k.a. how):

- Allows code-reuse: Subclasses can rely on superclasses or interfaces.
 - Example: print() implemented in List61B.java.
 - Gives another dimension of control to subclass designers: Can decide whether or not to override default implementations.

Important: In both cases, we specify "is-a" relationships, not "has-a".

- Good: Dog implements Animal, SLLList implements List61B.
- Bad: Cat implements Claw, Set implements SLLList.

[Video link](#)

Interface Inheritance vs Implementation Inheritance

How do we differentiate between "interface inheritance" and "implementation inheritance"?

Well, you can use this simple distinction:

- Interface inheritance (what): Simply tells what the subclasses should be able to do.
 - EX) all lists should be able to print themselves, how they do it is up to them.
- Implementation inheritance (how): Tells the subclasses how they should behave.
 - EX) Lists should print themselves exactly this way: by getting each element in order and then printing them.

When you are creating these hierarchies, remember that the relationship between a subclass and a superclass should be an "is-a" relationship. AKA Cat should only implement Animal. Cat **is an** Animal. You should not be defining them using a "has-a" relationship. Cat **has-a** Claw, but Cat definitely should not be implementing Claw.

Finally, Implementation inheritance may sound nice and all but there are some drawbacks:

- We are fallible humans, and we can't keep track of everything, so it's possible that you overrode a method but forgot you did.
- It may be hard to resolve conflicts in case two interfaces give conflicting default methods.
- It encourages overly complex code

What's Next?

- Discussion 4 TBA

Extends

Now you've seen how we can use the `implements` keyword to define a hierarchical relationship with interfaces. What if we wanted to define a hierarchical relationship between classes?

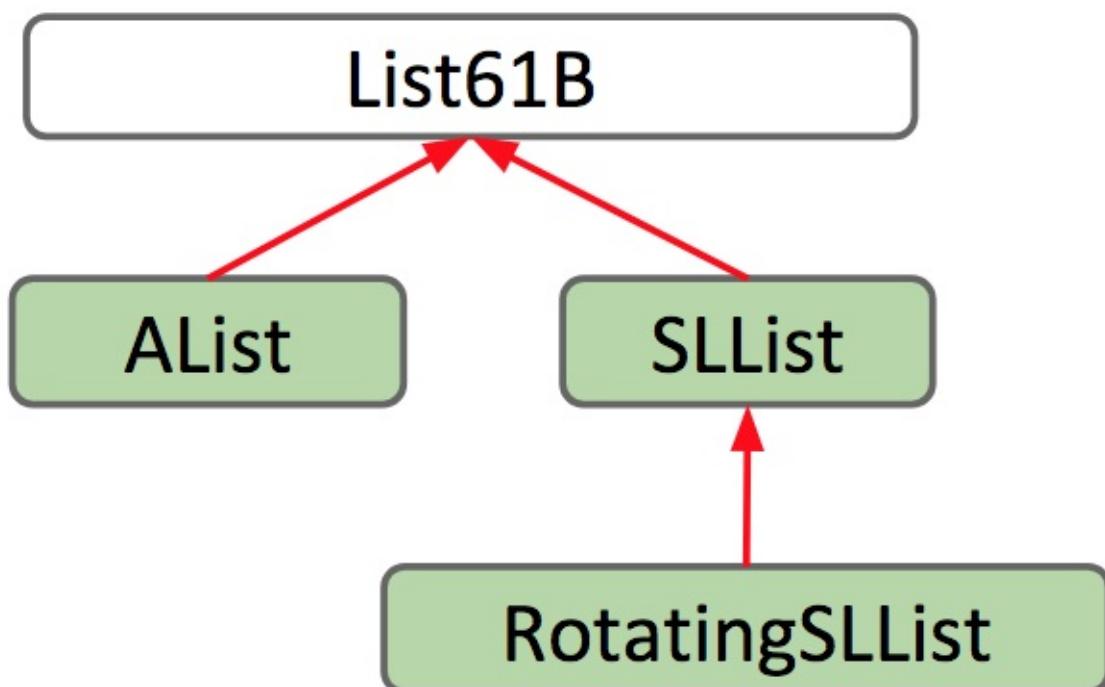
Suppose we want to build a `RotatingSLLList` that has the same functionality as the `SLLList` like `addFirst`, `size`, etc., but with an additional `rotateRight` operation to bring the last item to the front of the list.

One way you could do this would be to copy and paste all the methods from `SLLList` and write `rotateRight` on top of it all - but then we wouldn't be taking advantage of the power of inheritance! Remember that inheritance allows subclasses to *reuse* code from an already defined class. So let's define our `RotatingSLLList` class to inherit from `SLLList`.

We can set up this inheritance relationship in the class header, using the `extends` keyword like so:

```
public class RotatingSLLList<Item> extends SLLList<Item>
```

In the same way that `AList` shares an "is-a" relationship with `List61B`, `RotatingSLLList` shares an "is-a" relationship `SLLList`. The `extends` keyword lets us keep the original functionality of `SLLList`, while enabling us to make modifications and add additional functionality.



Now that we've defined our `RotatingSLList` to extend from `SLList`, let's give it its unique ability to rotate.

Exercise 4.2.1. Define the `rotateRight` method, which takes in an existing list, and rotates every element one spot to the right, moving the last item to the front of the list.

For example, calling `rotateRight` on `[5, 9, 15, 22]` should return `[22, 5, 9, 15]`.

Tip: are there any inherited methods that might be helpful in doing this?

The Extends Keyword

When a class is a **hyphenate** of an interface, we used `implements`.

- Example: `String` implements `Comparable`

If you want one class to inherit from another, we use `extends`.

We'd like to build a `RotatingSLList` class that extends `SLList` and implements `List` as well as:

- `rotateRight()`

Example: Suppose we have a `SLList` with elements [5, 9, 15, 22].

- After `rotateRight`: `[22, 5, 9, 15]`

```

graph TD
    SLList[SLList] --> RotatingSLList[RotatingSLList]
    
```

[Video link](#)

Here's what we came up with.

```

public void rotateRight() {
    Item x = removeLast();
    addFirst(x);
}
    
```

You might have noticed that we were able to use methods defined outside of `RotatingSLList`, because we used the `extends` keyword to inherit them from `SLList`. That gives rise to the question: What exactly do we inherit?

By using the `extends` keyword, subclasses inherit all **members** of the parent class.

"Members" includes:

- All instance and static variables
- All methods
- All nested classes

Note that constructors are not inherited, and private members cannot be directly accessed by subclasses.

VengefulSLLList

Notice that when someone calls `removeLast` on an SLList, it throws that value away - never to be seen again. But what if those removed values left and started a massive rebellion against us? In this case, we need to remember what those removed (or rather defected >:() values were so we can hunt them down and terminate them later.

We create a new class, VengefulSLLList, that remembers all items that have been banished by `removeLast`.

Like before, we specify in VengefulSLLList's class header that it should inherit from SLList.

```
public class VengefulSLLList<Item> extends SLList<Item>
```

Now, let's give VengefulSLLList a method to print out all of the items that have been removed by a call to the `removeLast` method, `printLostItems()`. We can do this by adding an instance variable that can keep track of all the deleted items. If we use an SLList to keep track of our items, then we can simply make a call to the `print()` method to print out all the items.

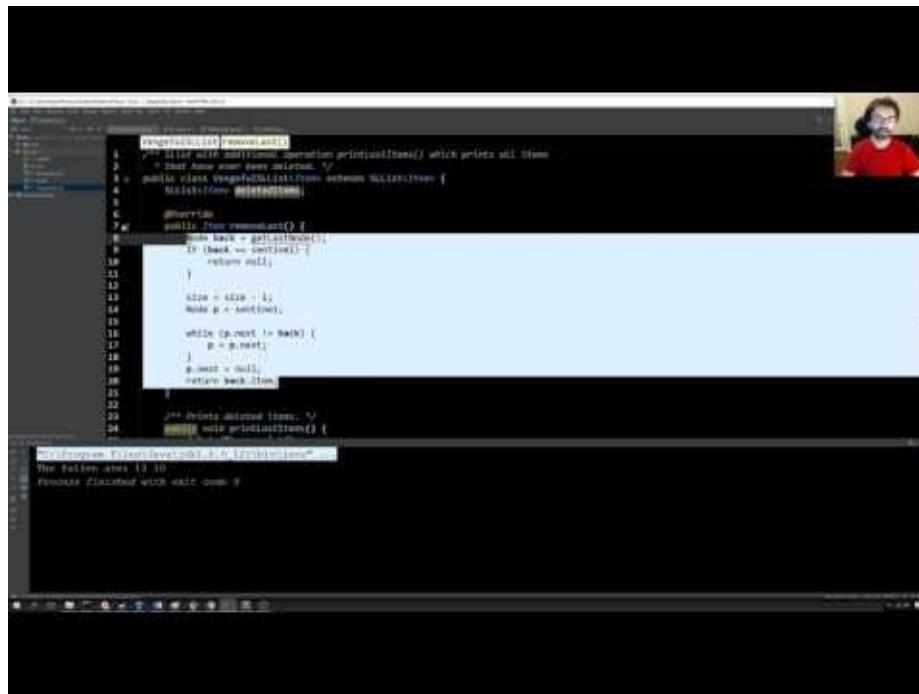
So far this is what we have:

```
public class VengefulSLLList<Item> extends SLList<Item> {
    SLList<Item> deletedItems;

    public void printLostItems() {
        deletedItems.print();
    }
}
```

VengefulSLLList's `removeLast` should do exactly the same thing that SLList's does, except with one additional operation - adding the removed item to the `deletedItems` list. In an effort to *reuse* code, we can **override** the `removeLast` method to modify it to fit our needs, and call the `removeLast` method defined in the parent class, SLList, using the `super` keyword.

Exercise 4.2.2. Override the `removeLast` method to remove the last item, add that item to the `deletedItems` list, then return it.



[Video link](#)

Finally, `VengefulSLLList` remembers all items deleted from it, as intended.

```
public class VengefulSLLList<Item> extends SLLList<Item> {
    SLLList<Item> deletedItems;

    public VengefulSLLList() {
        deletedItems = new SLLList<Item>();
    }

    @Override
    public Item removeLast() {
        Item x = super.removeLast();
        deletedItems.addLast(x);
        return x;
    }

    /** Prints deleted items. */
    public void printLostItems() {
        deletedItems.print();
    }
}
```

Constructors Are Not Inherited

As we mentioned earlier, subclasses inherit all members of the parent class, which includes instance and static variables, methods, and nested classes, but does *not* include constructors.

While constructors are not inherited, Java requires that all constructors **must start with a call to one of its superclass's constructors**.

To gain some intuition on why that it is, recall that the `extends` keyword defines an "is-a" relationship between a subclass and a parent class. If a `VengefulSLLList` "is-an" `SLLList`, then it follows that every `VengefulSLLList` must be set up like an `SLLList`.

Here's a more in-depth explanation. Let's say we have two classes:

```
public class Human {...}
```

```
public class TA extends Human {...}
```

It is logical for `TA` to extend `Human`, because all `TA`'s are `Human`. Thus, we want `TA`'s to inherit the attributes and behaviors of `Humans`.

If we run the code below:

```
TA Christine = new TA();
```

Then first, a `Human` must be created. Then, that `Human` can be given the qualities of a `TA`. It doesn't make sense for a `TA` to be constructed without first creating a `Human` first.

Thus, we can either explicitly make a call to the superclass's constructor, using the `super` keyword:

```
public VengefulSLLList() {
    super();
    deletedItems = new SLLList<Item>();
}
```

Or, if we choose not to, Java will automatically make a call to the superclass's *no-argument* constructor for us.

In this case, adding `super()` has no difference from the constructor we wrote before. It just makes explicit what was done implicitly by Java before. However, if we were to define another constructor in `VengefulSLLList`, Java's implicit call may not be what we intend to call.

Constructor Behavior Is Slightly Weird



Constructors are not inherited. However, the rules of Java say that all constructors must start with a call to one of the super class's constructors [Link].

- Idea: If every VengefulSLLList is-an SLLList, every VengefulSLLList must be set up like an SLLList.
 - If you didn't call SLLList constructor, sentinel would be null. Very bad.
- You can explicitly call the constructor with the keyword super (no dot).
- If you don't explicitly call the constructor, Java will automatically do it for you.

```
public VengefulSLLList() {
    deletedItems = new SLLList<Item>();
}

public VengefulSLLList() {
    super(); ← must come first!
    deletedItems = new SLLList<Item>();
}
```

these constructors are exactly equivalent

[Video link](#)

Suppose we had a one-argument constructor that took in an item. If we had relied on an implicit call to the superclass's *no-argument* constructor, `super()`, the item passed in as an argument wouldn't be placed anywhere!

So, we must make an explicit call to the correct constructor by passing in the item as a parameter to `super`.

```
public VengefulSLLList(Item x) {
    super(x);
    deletedItems = new SLLList<Item>();
}
```

The Object Class

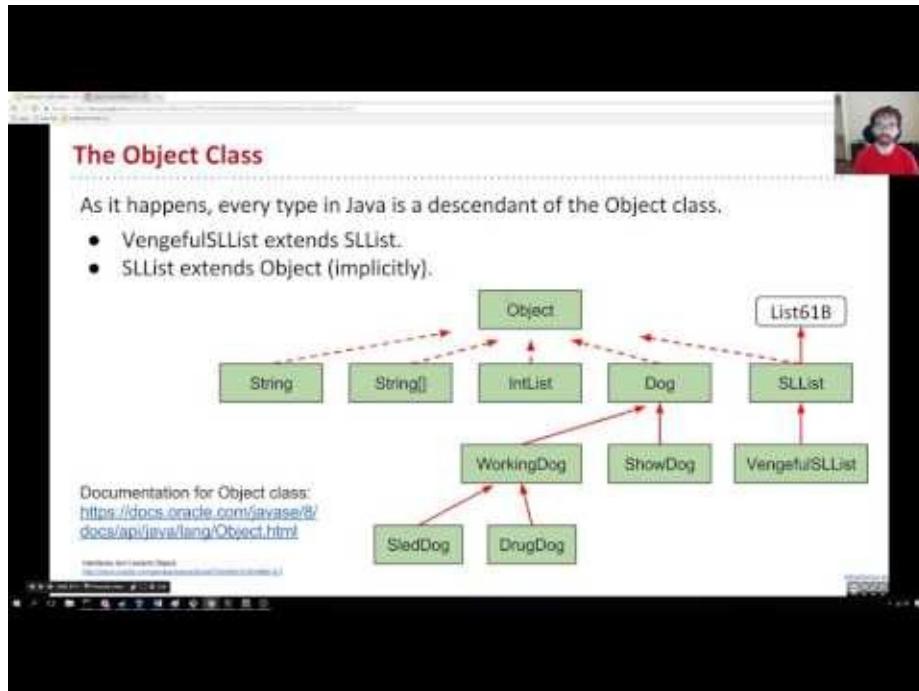
Every class in Java is a descendant of the Object class, or `extends` the Object class. Even classes that do not have an explicit `extends` in their class still *implicitly* extend the Object class.

For example,

- `VengefulSLLList` `extends` `SLLList` explicitly in its class declaration
- `SLLList` `extends` `Object` implicitly

This means that since `SLLList` inherits all members of `Object`, `VengefulSLLList` inherits all members of `SLLList` and `Object`, transitively. So, what is to be inherited from `Object`?

As seen in the [documentation for the Object class](#), the Object class provides operations that every Object should be able to do - like `.equals(Object obj)` , `.hashCode()` , and `toString()` .



[Video link](#)

Is-a vs. Has-a

Important Note: The `extends` keyword defines "is-a", or hypernymic relationships. A common mistake is to instead use it for "has-a", or meronymic relationships.

When extending a class, a wise thing to do would be to ask yourself if the "is-a" relationship makes sense.

- Shower `is a` Bathroom ? No!
- VengefulSLLList `is a` SLLList ? Yes!

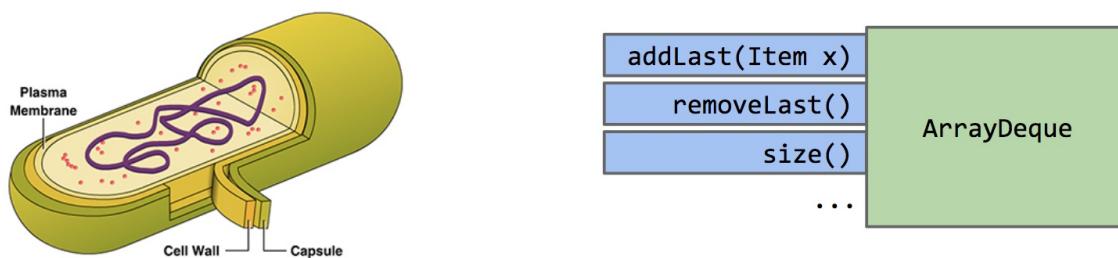
Encapsulation

Encapsulation is one of the fundamental principles of object oriented programming, and is one of the approaches that we take as programmers to resist our biggest enemy: *complexity*. Managing complexity is one of the major challenges we must face when writing large programs.

Some of the tools we can use to fight complexity include hierarchical abstraction (abstraction barriers!) and a concept known as "Design for change". This revolves around the idea that programs should be built into modular, interchangeable pieces that can be swapped around

without breaking the system. Additionally, **hiding information** that others don't need is another fundamental approach when managing a large system.

The root of encapsulation lies in this notion of hiding information from the outside. One way to look at it is to see how encapsulation is analogous to a Human cell. The internals of a cell may be extremely complex, consisting of chromosomes, mitochondria, ribosomes etc., but yet it is fully encapsulated into a single *module* - abstracting away the complexity inside.



In computer science terms, a module can be defined as a set of methods that work together as a whole to perform a task or set of related tasks. This could be something like a class that represents a list. Now, if the implementation details of a module are kept internally hidden and the only way to interact with it is through a documented interface, then that module is said to be encapsulated.

Take the `ArrayDeque` class, for example. The outside world is able to utilize and interact with an `ArrayDeque` through its defined methods, like `addLast` and `removeLast`. However, they need not understand the complex details of how the data structure was implemented in order to be able to use it effectively.



Modules and Encapsulation [Shewchuk]



Module: A set of methods that work together as a whole to perform some task or set of related tasks.

A module is said to be **encapsulated** if its implementation is completely hidden, and it can be accessed only through a documented interface.



[Video link](#)

Abstraction Barriers

Ideally, a user should not be able to observe the internal workings of, say, a data structure they are using. Fortunately, Java makes it easy to enforce abstraction barriers. Using the `private` keyword in Java, it becomes virtually impossible to look inside an object - ensuring that the underlying complexity isn't exposed to the outside world.

How Inheritance Breaks Encapsulation

Suppose we had the following two methods in a `Dog` class. We could have implemented `bark` and `barkMany` like so:

```
public void bark() {
    System.out.println("bark");
}

public void barkMany(int N) {
    for (int i = 0; i < N; i += 1) {
        bark();
    }
}
```

Or, alternatively, we could have implemented it like so:

```
public void bark() {
    barkMany(1);
}

public void barkMany(int N) {
    for (int i = 0; i < N; i += 1) {
        System.out.println("bark");
    }
}
```

From a user's perspective, the functionality of either of these implementations is exactly the same. However, observe the effect if we were to define a subclass of `Dog` called `VerboseDog`, and override its `barkMany` method as such:

```
@Override
public void barkMany(int N) {
    System.out.println("As a dog, I say: ");
    for (int i = 0; i < N; i += 1) {
        bark();
    }
}
```

Exercise 4.2.3. Given a VerboseDog `vd`, what would `vd.barkMany(3)` output, given the first implementation above? The second implementation?

- a: As a dog, I say: bark bark bark
- b: bark bark bark
- c: Something else

```

public void bark() {
    System.out.println("bark");
}
public void barkMany(int N) {
    for (int i = 0; i < N; i += 1) {
        bark();
    }
}

@Override
public void barkMany(int N) {
    System.out.println("As a dog, I say:");
    for (int i = 0; i < N; i += 1) {
        bark(); — calls inherited bark method
    }
}

```

[Video link](#)

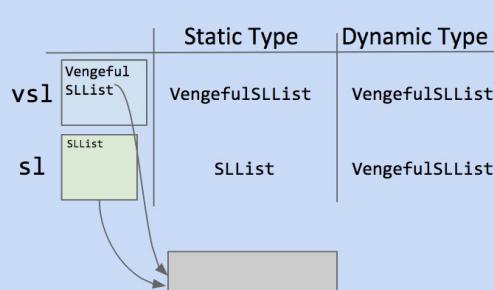
As you have seen, using the first implementation, the output is A, while using the second implementation, the program gets caught in an infinite loop. The call to `bark()` will call `barkMany(1)`, which makes a call to `bark()`, repeating the process infinitely many times.

Type Checking and Casting

Before we go into types and casting, let's review dynamic method selection. Recall that dynamic method lookup is the process of determining the method that is executed at runtime based on the dynamic type of the object. Specifically, if a method in SLLList is overridden by the VengefulSLLList class, then the method that is called at runtime is determined by the runtime type, or dynamic type, of that variable.

Exercise 4.2.4. For each line of code below, decide the following:

- Does that line cause a compilation error?
- Which method uses dynamic selection?



```
public static void main(String[] args) {
    VengefulSLList<Integer> vsl =
        new VengefulSLList<Integer>(9);
    SLList<Integer> sl = vsl;

    sl.addLast(50);
    sl.removeLast();

    sl.printLostItems();
    VengefulSLList<Integer> vsl2 = sl;
}
```

Let's go through this program line by line.

```
VengefulSLList<Integer> vsl = new VengefulSLList<Integer>(9);
SLList<Integer> sl = vsl;
```

These two lines above compile just fine. Since `VengefulSLList` "is-an" `SLList`, it's valid to put an instance of the `VengefulSLList` class inside an `SLList` "container".

```
sl.addLast(50);
sl.removeLast();
```

These lines above also compile. The call to `addLast` is unambiguous, as `VengefulSLList` did not override or implement it, so the method executed is in `SLList`. The `removeLast` method is overridden by `VengefulSLList`, however, so we take a look at the dynamic type of `sl`. Its dynamic type is `VengefulSLList`, and so dynamic method selection chooses the overridden method in the `VengefulSLList` class.

```
sl.printLostItems();
```

This line above results in a compile-time error. Remember that the compiler determines whether or not something is valid based on the static type of the object. Since `sl` is of static type `SLList`, and `printLostItems` is not defined in the `SLList` class, the code will not be allowed to run, *even though* `sl`'s runtime type is `VengefulSLList`.

```
VengefulSLList<Integer> vsl2 = sl;
```

This line above also results in a compile-time error, for a similar reason. In general, the compiler only allows method calls and assignments based on compile-time types. Since the compiler only sees that the static type of `sl` is `SLList`, it will not allow a `VengefulSLList` "container" to hold it.

Expressions

Like variables as seen above, expressions using the `new` keyword also have compile-time types.

```
SLLList<Integer> sl = new VengefulSLLList<Integer>();
```

Above, the compile-time type of the right-hand side of the expression is `VengefulSLLList`. The compiler checks to make sure that `VengefulSLLList` "is-a" `SLLList`, and allows this assignment,

```
VengefulSLLList<Integer> vsl = new SLLList<Integer>();
```

Above, the compile-time type of the right-hand side of the expression is `SLLList`. The compiler checks if `SLLList` "is-a" `VengefulSLLList`, which it is not in all cases, and thus a compilation error results.

Further, method calls have compile-time types equal to their declared type. Suppose we have this method:

```
public static Dog maxDog(Dog d1, Dog d2) { ... }
```

Since the return type of `maxDog` is `Dog`, any call to `maxDog` will have compile-time type `Dog`.

```
Poodle frank = new Poodle("Frank", 5);
Poodle frankJr = new Poodle("Frank Jr.", 15);

Dog largerDog = maxDog(frank, frankJr);
Poodle largerPoodle = maxDog(frank, frankJr); //does not compile! RHS has compile-time
      type Dog
```

Assigning a `Dog` object to a `Poodle` variable, like in the `SLLList` case, results in a compilation error. A `Poodle` "is-a" `Dog`, but a more general `Dog` object may not always be a `Poodle`, even if it clearly is to you and me (we know that `frank` and `frankJr` are both `Poodles`!). Is there any way around this, when we know for certain that assignment would work?

Casting

Java has a special syntax where you can tell the compiler that a specific expression has a specific compile-time type. This is called "casting". With casting, we can tell the compiler to view an expression as a different compile-time type.

Looking back at the code that failed above, since we know that `frank` and `frankJr` are both Poodles, we can cast:

```
Poodle largerPoodle = (Poodle) maxDog(frank, frankJr); // compiles! Right hand side has compile-time type Poodle after casting
```



Compile-Time Types and Expressions



Expressions have compile-time types:

- Method calls have compile-time type equal to their declared type.

```
public static Dog maxDog(Dog d1, Dog d2) { ... }
```

- Any call to `maxDog` will have compile-time type `Dog`!

Example:

```
Poodle frank = new Poodle("Frank", 5);
Poodle frankJr = new Poodle("Frank Jr.", 15);

Dog largerDog = maxDog(frank, frankJr);
Poodle largerPoodle = maxDog(frank, frankJr);
```

Compilation error!

RHS has
compile-time type
Dog.



[Video link](#)

Caution: Casting is a powerful but dangerous tool. Essentially, casting is telling the compiler not to do its type-checking duties - telling it to trust you and act the way you want it to. Here's a possible issue that could arise:

```
Poodle frank = new Poodle("Frank", 5);
Malamute frankSr = new Malamute("Frank Sr.", 100);

Poodle largerPoodle = (Poodle) maxDog(frank, frankSr); // runtime exception!
```

In this case, we compare a Poodle and a Malamute. Without casting, the compiler would normally not allow the call to `maxDog` to compile, as the right hand side compile-time type would be `Dog`, not `Poodle`. However, casting allows this code to pass, and when `maxDog` returns the Malamute at runtime, and we try casting a Malamute as a `Poodle`, we run into a runtime exception - a `ClassCastException`.

Higher Order Functions

Taking a little bit of a detour, we are going to introduce higher order functions. A higher order function is a function that treats other functions as data. For example, take this Python program `do_twice` that takes in another function as input, and applies it to the input `x` twice.

```
def tenX(x):
    return 10*x

def do_twice(f, x):
    return f(f(x))
```

A call to `print(do_twice(tenX, 2))` would apply `tenX` to 2, and apply `tenX` again to its result, 20, resulting in 200. How would we do something like this in Java?

In old school Java (Java 7 and earlier), memory boxes (variables) could not contain pointers to functions. What that means is that we could not write a function that has a "Function" type, as there was simply no type for functions.

To get around this we can take advantage of interface inheritance. Let's write an interface that defines any function that takes in an integer and returns an integer - an

`IntUnaryFunction`.

```
public interface IntUnaryFunction {
    int apply(int x);
}
```

Now we can write a class which `implements IntUnaryFunction` to represent a concrete function. Let's make a function that takes in an integer and returns 10 times that integer.

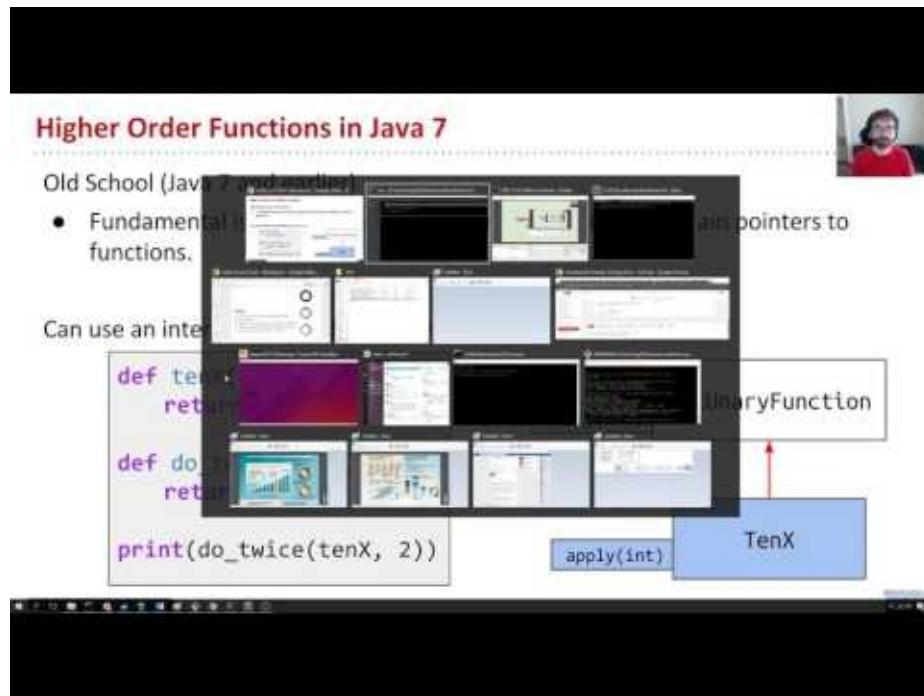
```
public class TenX implements IntUnaryFunction {
    /* Returns ten times the argument. */
    public int apply(int x) {
        return 10 * x;
    }
}
```

At this point, we've written in Java the Python equivalent of the `tenX` function. Let's write `do_twice` now.

```
public static int do_twice(IntUnaryFunction f, int x) {
    return f.apply(f.apply(x));
}
```

A call to `print(do_twice(tenX, 2))` in Java would look like this:

```
System.out.println(do_twice(new TenX(), 2));
```



[Video link](#)

Inheritance Cheatsheet

`VengefulSLLList extends SLLList` means VengefulSLLList "is-an" SLLList, and inherits all of SLLList's members:

- Variables, methods nested classes
- Not constructors Subclass constructors must invoke superclass constructor first. The `super` keyword can be used to invoke overridden superclass methods and constructors.

Invocation of overridden methods follows two simple rules:

- Compiler plays it safe and only allows us to do things according to the static type.
- For overridden methods (*not overloaded methods*), the actual method invoked is based on the dynamic type of the invoking expression
- Can use casting to overrule compiler type checking.

Subtype Polymorphism

We've seen how inheritance lets us reuse existing code in a superclass while implementing small modifications by overriding a superclass's methods or writing brand new methods in the subclass. Inheritance also makes it possible to design general data structures and methods using *polymorphism*.

Polymorphism, at its core, means 'many forms'. In Java, polymorphism refers to how objects can have many forms or types. In object-oriented programming, polymorphism relates to how an object can be regarded as an instance of its own class, an instance of its superclass, an instance of its superclass's superclass, and so on.

Consider a variable `deque` of static type `Deque`. A call to `deque.addFirst()` will be determined at the time of execution, depending on the run-time type, or dynamic type, of `deque` when `addFirst` is called. As we saw in the last chapter, Java picks which method to call using dynamic method selection.

Suppose we want to write a python program that prints a string representation of the larger of two objects. There are two approaches to this.

1. Explicit HoF Approach

```
def print_larger(x, y, compare, stringify):
    if compare(x, y):
        return stringify(x)
    return stringify(y)
```

1. Subtype Polymorphism Approach

```
def print_larger(x, y):
    if x.largerThan(y):
        return x.str()
    return y.str()
```

Using the explicit higher order function approach, you have a common way to print out the larger of two objects. In contrast, in the subtype polymorphism approach, the object *itself* makes the choices. The `largerFunction` that is called is dependent on what `x` and `y` actually are.



Subtype Polymorphism



The biggest idea of the last couple of lectures: **Subtype Polymorphism**

- Polymorphism: "providing a single interface to entities of different types"

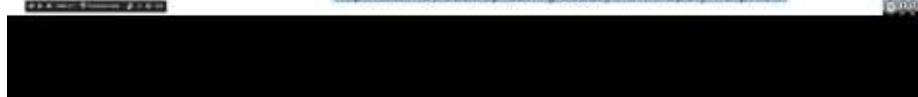
a.k.a. compile-time type.

Consider a variable deque of static type Deque:

- When you call `deque.addFirst()`, the actual behavior is based on the dynamic type. a.k.a. run-time type
- Java automatically selects the right behavior using what is sometimes called "dynamic method selection".

Curious about alternatives to subtype polymorphism? See [wiki](#) or CS164.

<http://www.stroustrup.com/glossary.html#Gpolymorphism>



[Video link](#)

Max Function

Say we want to write a `max` function which takes in any array - regardless of type - and returns the maximum item in the array.

Exercise 4.3.1. Your task is to determine how many compilation errors there are in the code below.

```
public static Object max(Object[] items) {
    int maxDex = 0;
    for (int i = 0; i < items.length; i += 1) {
        if (items[i] > items[maxDex]) {
            maxDex = i;
        }
    }
    return items[maxDex];
}

public static void main(String[] args) {
    Dog[] dogs = {new Dog("Elyse", 3), new Dog("Sture", 9), new Dog("Benjamin", 15)};
    Dog maxDog = (Dog) max(dogs);
    maxDog.bark();
}
```

shoutkey.com/TBA

Suppose we want to write a function `max()` that returns the max of any array, regardless of type. How many compilation errors are there in the code shown?

A. 0
B. 1
C. 2
D. 3

```

public static Object max(Object[] items) {
    int maxDex = 0;
    for (int i = 0; i < items.length; i += 1) {
        if (items[i] > items[maxDex]) {
            maxDex = i;
        }
    }
    return items[maxDex];
}
public static void main(String[] args) {
    Dog[] dogs = {new Dog("Elyse", 3), new Dog("Sture", 9),
                 new Dog("Benjamin", 15)};
    Dog maxDog = (Dog) max(dogs);
    maxDog.bark();
}

```

Maximizer.java

[Video link](#)

In the code above, there was only 1 error, found at this line:

```
if (items[i] > items[maxDex]) {
```

The reason why this results in a compilation error is because this line assumes that the `>` operator works with arbitrary `Object` types, when in fact it does not.

Instead, one thing we could do is define a `maxDog` function in the `Dog` class, and give up on writing a "one true max function" that could take in an array of any arbitrary type. We might define something like this:

```

public static Dog maxDog(Dog[] dogs) {
    if (dogs == null || dogs.length == 0) {
        return null;
    }
    Dog maxDog = dogs[0];
    for (Dog d : dogs) {
        if (d.size > maxDog.size) {
            maxDog = d;
        }
    }
    return maxDog;
}

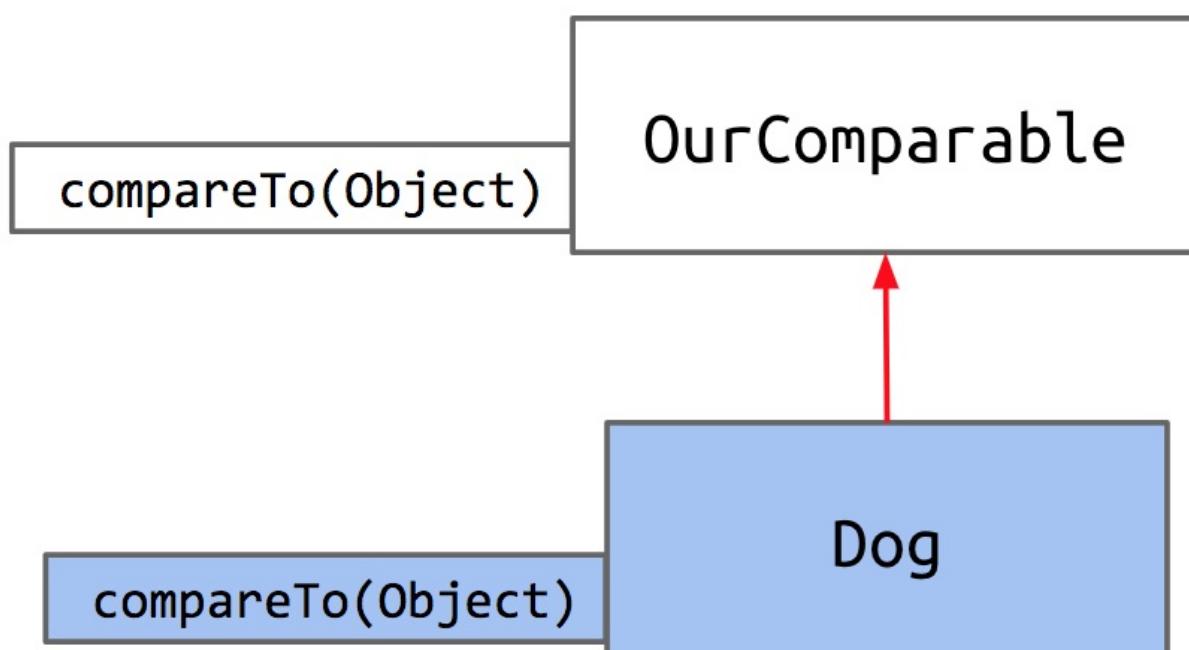
```

While this would work for now, if we give up on our dream of making a generalized `max` function and let the `Dog` class define its own `max` function, then we'd have to do the same for any class we define later. We'd need to write a `maxCat` function, a `maxPenguin` function,

a `maxWhale` function, etc., resulting in unnecessary repeated work and a lot of redundant code.

The fundamental issue that gives rise to this is that Objects cannot be compared with `>`. This makes sense, as how could Java know whether it should use the String representation of the object, or the size, or another metric, to make the comparison? In Python or C++, the way that the `>` operator works could be redefined to work in different ways when applied to different types. Unfortunately, Java does not have this capability. Instead, we turn to interface inheritance to help us out.

We can create an interface that guarantees that any implementing class, like Dog, contains a comparison method, which we'll call `compareTo`.



Let's write our interface. We'll specify one method `compareTo`.

```

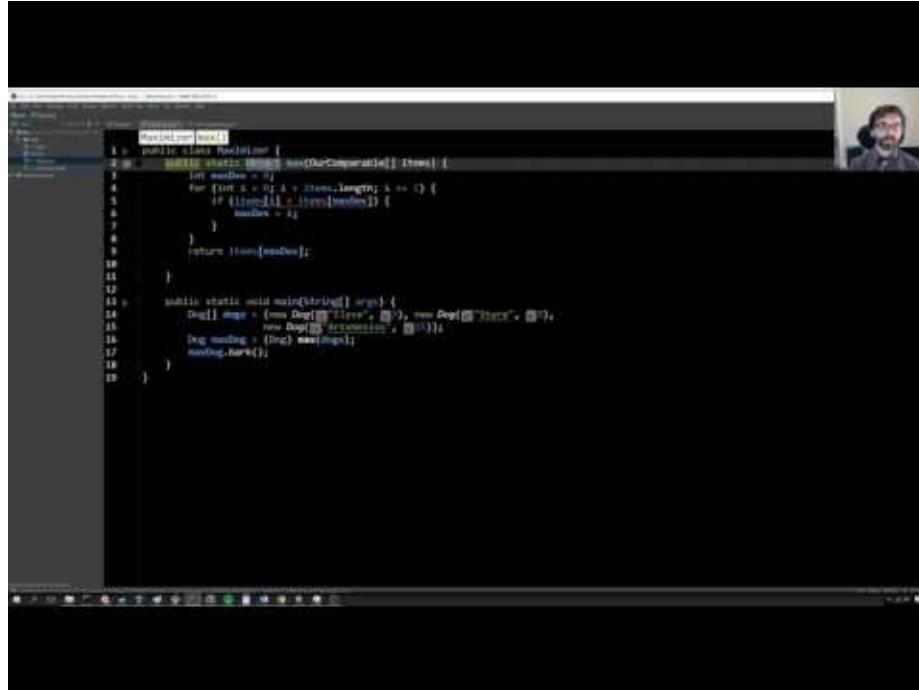
public interface OurComparable {
    public int compareTo(Object o);
}
  
```

We will define its behavior like so:

- Return -1 if `this < o`.
- Return 0 if `this equals o`.
- Return 1 if `this > o`.

Now that we've created the `OurComparable` interface, we can require that our Dog class implements the `compareTo` method. First, we change Dog's class header to include `implements OurComparable`, and then we write the `compareTo` method according to its defined behavior above.

Exercise 4.3.2. Implement the `compareTo` method for the Dog class.



[Video link](#)

We use the instance variable `size` to make our comparison.

```

public class Dog implements OurComparable {
    private String name;
    private int size;

    public Dog(String n, int s) {
        name = n;
        size = s;
    }

    public void bark() {
        System.out.println(name + " says: bark");
    }

    public int compareTo(Object o) {
        Dog uddaDog = (Dog) o;
        if (this.size < uddaDog.size) {
            return -1;
        } else if (this.size == uddaDog.size) {
            return 0;
        }
        return 1;
    }
}

```

Notice that since `compareTo` takes in any arbitrary Object `o`, we have to cast the input to a Dog to make our comparison using the `size` instance variable.

Now we can generalize the `max` function we defined in exercise 4.3.1 to, instead of taking in any arbitrary array of objects, takes in `OurComparable` objects - which we know for certain all have the `compareTo` method implemented.

```

public static OurComparable max(OurComparable[] items) {
    int maxDex = 0;
    for (int i = 0; i < items.length; i += 1) {
        int cmp = items[i].compareTo(items[maxDex]);
        if (cmp > 0) {
            maxDex = i;
        }
    }
    return items[maxDex];
}

```

Great! Now our `max` function can take in an array of any `OurComparable` type objects and return the maximum object in the array. Now, this code is admittedly quite long, so we can make it much more succinct by modifying our `compareTo` method's behavior:

- Return negative number if `this < o`.
- Return 0 if `this equals o`.

- Return positive number if `this > o`.

Now, we can just return the difference between the sizes. If my size is 2, and uddaDog's size is 5, `compareTo` would return -3, a negative number indicating that I am smaller.

```
public int compareTo(Object o) {  
    Dog uddaDog = (Dog) o;  
    return this.size - uddaDog.size;  
}
```

Using inheritance, we were able to generalize our maximization function. What are the benefits to this approach?

- No need for maximization code in every class(i.e. no `Dog.maxDog(Dog[])` function required
- We have code that operates on multiple types (mostly) gracefully

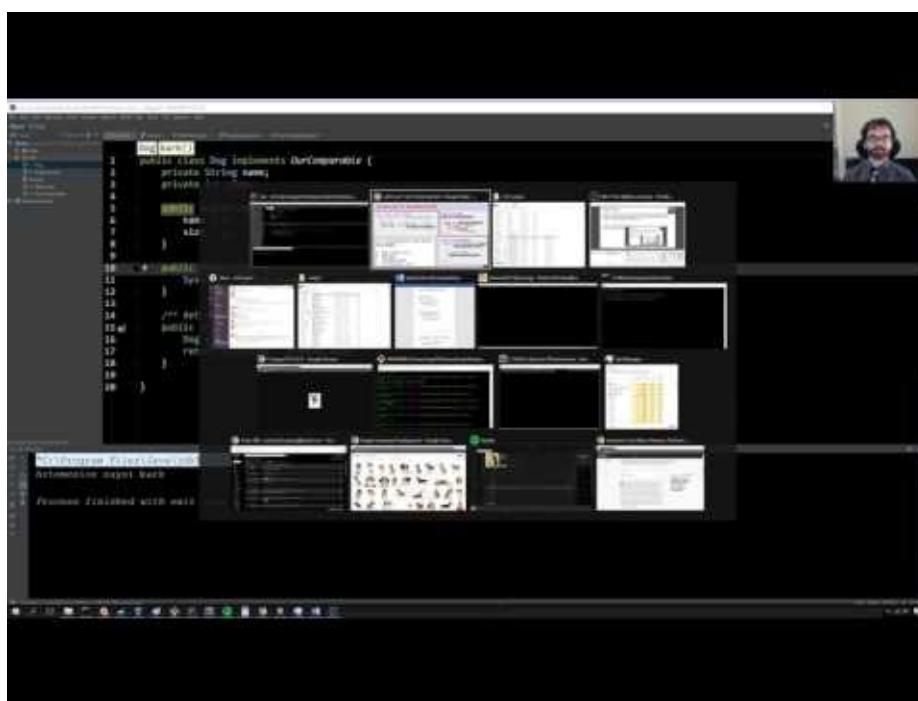
Interfaces Quiz

Exercise 4.3.3. Given the `Dog` class, `DogLauncher` class, `OurComparable` interface, and the `Maximizer` class, if we omit the `compareTo()` method from the `Dog` class, which file will fail to compile?

```
public class DogLauncher {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        ...
        Dog[] dogs = new Dog[]{d1, d2, d3};
        System.out.println(Maximizer.max(dogs));
    }
}

public class Dog implements OurComparable {
    ...
    public int compareTo(Object o) {
        Dog uddaDog = (Dog) o;
        if (this.size < uddaDog.size) {
            return -1;
        } else if (this.size == uddaDog.size) {
            return 0;
        }
        return 1;
    }
    ...
}

public class Maximizer {
    public static OurComparable max(OurComparable[] items) {
        ...
        int cmp = items[i].compareTo(items[maxDex]);
        ...
    }
}
```



[Video link](#)

In this case, the `Dog` class fails to compile. By declaring that it `implements OurComparable`, the Dog class makes a claim that it "is-an" `OurComparable`. As a result, the compiler checks that this claim is actually true, but sees that `Dog` doesn't implement `compareTo`.

What if we were to omit `implements OurComparable` from the `Dog` class header? This would cause a compile error in `DogLauncher` due to this line:

```
System.out.println(Maximizer.max(dogs));
```

If `Dog` does not implement the `OurComparable` interface, then trying to pass in an array of Dogs to `Maximizer's max` function wouldn't be approved by the compiler. `max` only accepts an array of `OurComparable` objects.

Comparables

The `OurComparable` interface that we just built works, but it's not perfect. Here are some issues with it:

- Awkward casting to/from Objects
- We made it up.
 - No existing classes implement `OurComparable` (e.g. `String`, etc.)
 - No existing classes use `OurComparable` (e.g. no built-in `max` function that uses `OurComparable`)

The solution? We'll take advantage of an interface that already exists called `comparable`. `comparable` is already defined by Java and is used by countless libraries.

`Comparable` looks very similar to the `OurComparable` interface we made, but with one main difference. Can you spot it?

```
public interface Comparable<T> {
    public int compareTo(T obj);
}
```

```
public interface OurComparable {
    public int compareTo(Object obj);
}
```

Notice that `Comparable<T>` means that it takes a generic type. This will help us avoid having to cast an object to a specific type! Now, we will rewrite the `Dog` class to implement the `Comparable` interface, being sure to update the generic type `T` to `Dog`:

```
public class Dog implements Comparable<Dog> {
    ...
    public int compareTo(Dog uddaDog) {
        return this.size - uddaDog.size;
    }
}
```

Now all that's left is to change each instance of OurComparable in the Maximizer class to Comparable. Watch as the largest Dog says bark:

The Issues With OurComparable

Two issues:

- Awkward casting to/from Objects.
- We made it up.
 - No existing classes implement OurComparable (e.g. String, etc).
 - No existing classes use OurComparable (e.g. no built-in max function that uses OurComparable)

The industrial strength approach: Use the built-in Comparable interface.

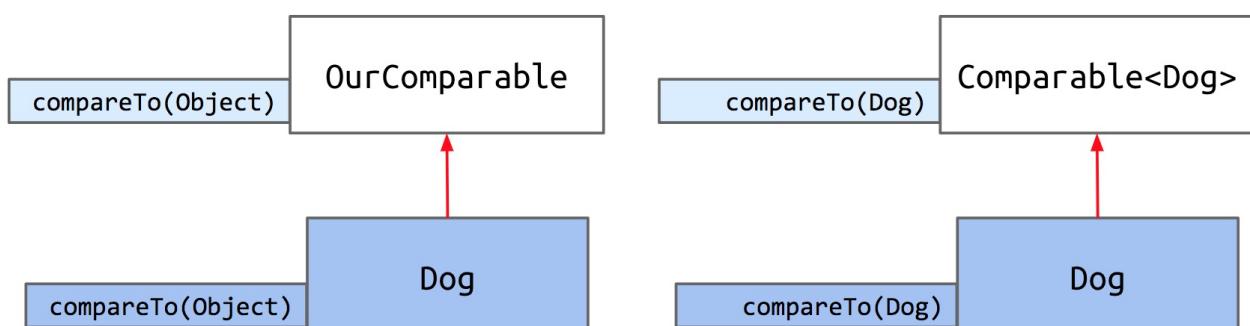
- Already defined and used by tons of libraries. Uses generics.

```
public interface Comparable<T> {
    public int compareTo(T obj);
}
```

```
public interface OurComparable {
    public int compareTo(Object obj);
}
```

[Video link](#)

Instead of using our personally created interface `OurComparable`, we now use the real, built-in interface, `Comparable`. As a result, we can take advantage of all the libraries that already exist and use `Comparable`.



Comparator

We've just learned about the `comparable` interface, which imbeds into each `Dog` the ability to compare itself to another `Dog`. Now, we will introduce a new interface that looks very similar called `Comparator`.

Let's start off by defining some terminology.

- Natural order - used to refer to the ordering implied in the `compareTo` method of a particular class.

As an example, the natural ordering of `Dogs`, as we stated previously, is defined according to the value of `size`. What if we'd like to sort `Dogs` in a different way than their natural ordering, such as by alphabetical order of their name?

Java's way of doing this is by using `Comparator`'s. Since a `comparator` is an object, the way we'll use `Comparator` is by writing a nested class inside `Dog` that implements the `Comparator` interface.

But first, what's inside this interface?

```
public interface Comparator<T> {  
    int compare(T o1, T o2);  
}
```

This shows that the `Comparator` interface requires that any implementing class implements the `compare` method. The rule for `compare` is just like `compareTo`:

- Return negative number if $o1 < o2$.
- Return 0 if $o1$ equals $o2$.
- Return positive number if $o1 > o2$.

Let's give `Dog` a `NameComparator`. To do this, we can simply defer to `String`'s already defined `compareTo` method.

```

import java.util.Comparator;

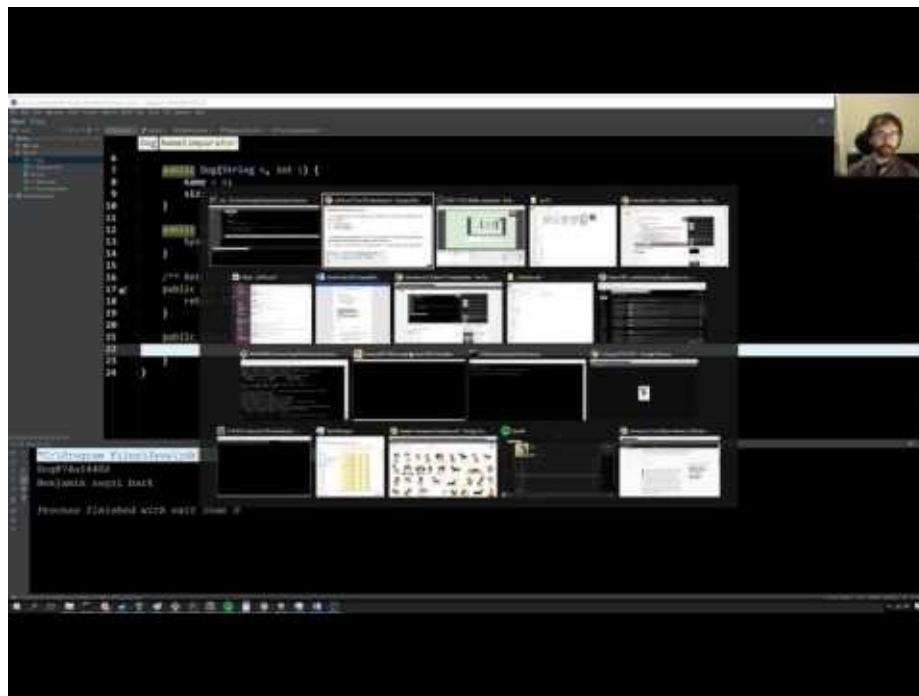
public class Dog implements Comparable<Dog> {
    ...
    public int compareTo(Dog uddaDog) {
        return this.size - uddaDog.size;
    }

    private static class NameComparator implements Comparator<Dog> {
        public int compare(Dog a, Dog b) {
            return a.name.compareTo(b.name);
        }
    }

    public static Comparator<Dog> getNameComparator() {
        return new NameComparator();
    }
}

```

Note that we've declared NameComparator to be a static class. A minor difference, but we do so because we do not need to instantiate a Dog to get a NameComparator. Let's see how this Comparator works in action.



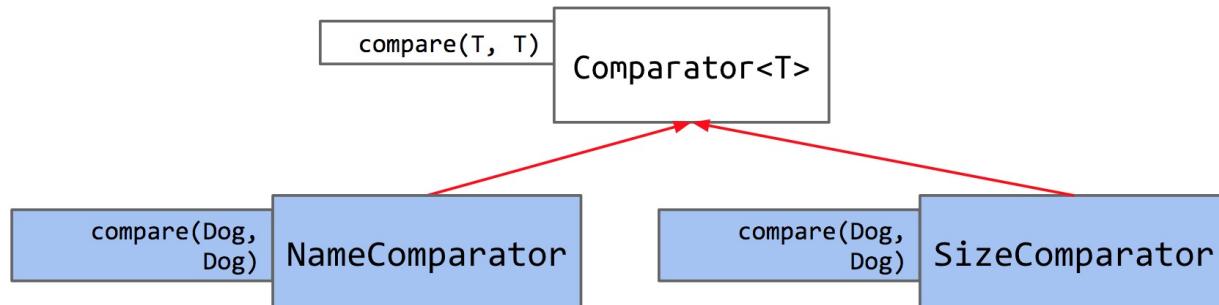
[Video link](#)

As you've seen, we can retrieve our NameComparator like so:

```
Comparator<Dog> nc = Dog.getNameComparator();
```

All in all, we have a Dog class that has a private NameComparator class and a method that returns a NameComparator we can use to compare dogs alphabetically by name.

Let's see how everything works in the inheritance hierarchy - we have a Comparator interface that's built-in to Java, which we can implement to define our own Comparators (`NameComparator`, `SizeComparator`, etc.) within Dog.



To summarize, interfaces in Java provide us with the ability to make **callbacks**. Sometimes, a function needs the help of another function that might not have been written yet (e.g. `max` needs `compareTo`). A callback function is the helping function (in the scenario, `compareTo`). In some languages, this is accomplished using explicit function passing; in Java, we wrap the needed function in an interface.

A Comparable says, "I want to compare myself to another object". It is imbedded within the object itself, and it defines the **natural ordering** of a type. A Comparator, on the other hand, is more like a third party machine that compares two objects to each other. Since there's only room for one `compareTo` method, if we want multiple ways to compare, we must turn to Comparator.

Abstract Data Types (ADTS)

Abstract Data Types

An **Abstract Data Type (ADT)** is defined only by its operations, not by its implementation.

Deque ADT:

- addFirst(Item x);
- addLast(Item x);
- boolean isEmpty();
- int size();
- printDeque();
- Item removeFirst();
- Item removeLast();
- Item get(int index);

Diagram showing Deque inheritance:

```
graph TD; Deque[Deque] --> ArrayDeque[Array Deque]; Deque --> LinkedListDeque[LinkedList Deque]
```

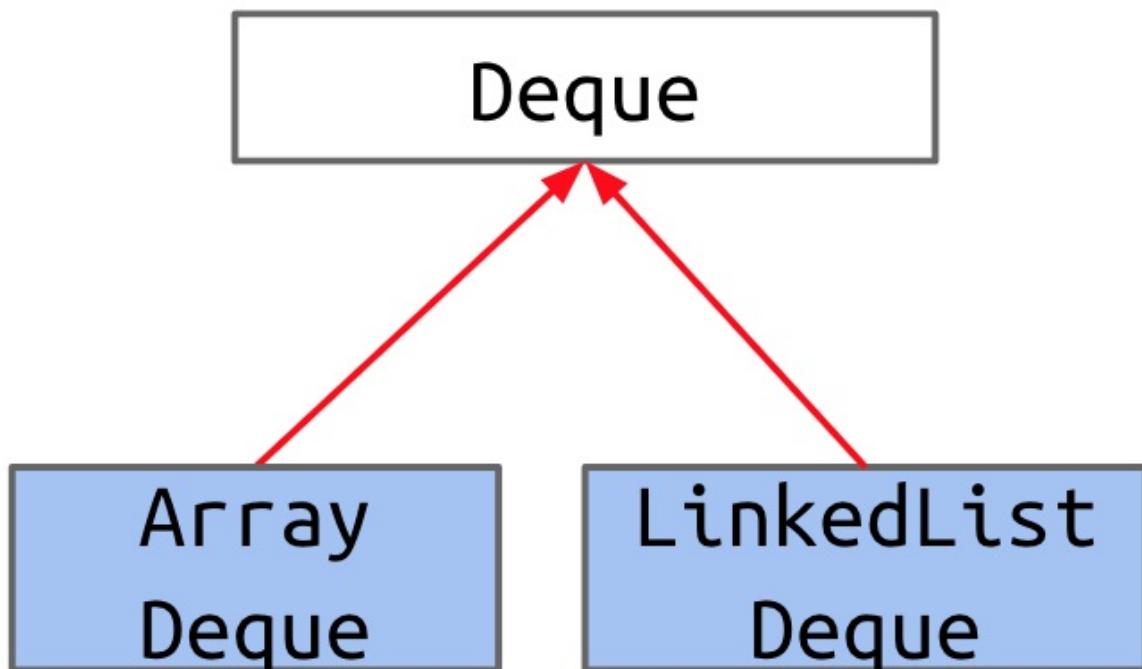
ArrayDeque and LinkedList Deque are implementations of the Deque ADT.



[Video link](#)

Despite not talking about them explicitly, we have actually seen a few Abstract Data types already in class!

Two examples are List61B and Deque. Let's hone in on Deque.



We have this interface `deque` that both `ArrayDeque` and `LinkedListDeque` implement. What is the relationship between `Deque` and its implementing classes? Well, `deque` simply provides a list of methods (behaviors):

```
public void addFirst(T item);
public void addLast(T item);
public boolean isEmpty();
public int size();
public void printDeque();
public T removeFirst();
public T removeLast();
public T get(int index);
```

These methods are actually **implemented** by `ArrayDeque` and `LinkedListDeque`.

In Java, `Deque` is called an interface. Conceptually, we call `deque` an **Abstract data type**. `Deque` only comes with behaviors, not any concrete ways to exhibit those behaviors. In this way, it is abstract.

Java Libraries

Java has certain built-in Abstract data types that you can use. These are packaged in Java Libraries.

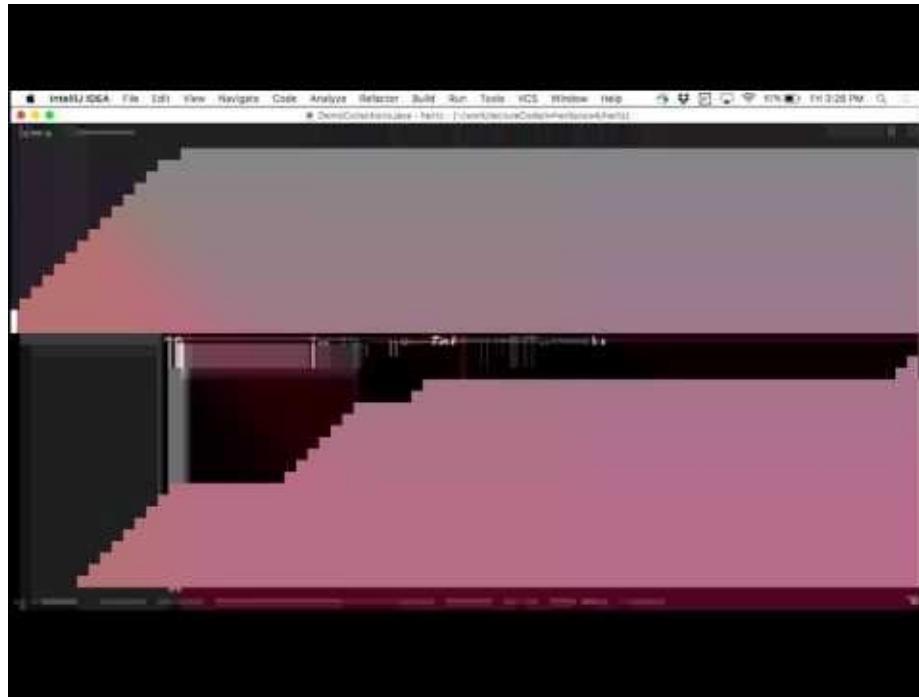
The three most important ADTs come in the `java.util` library:

- **List**: an ordered collection of items
 - A popular implementation is the `ArrayList`
- **Set**: an unordered collection of strictly unique items (no repeats)
 - A popular implementation is the `HashSet`
- **Map**: a collection of key/value pairs. You access the value via the key.
 - A popular implementation is the `HashMap`

Finish the exercises below by using the above three ADT's. Reading the documentations linked above will help immensely.

Exercise 4.4.1 Write a method `getwords` that takes in a `String inputFileName` and puts every word from the input file into a list. Recall how we read words from a file in proj0. *Hint: use `In`

Exercise 4.4.2 Write a method `countUniqueWords` that takes in a `List<String>` and counts how many **unique** words there are in the file.



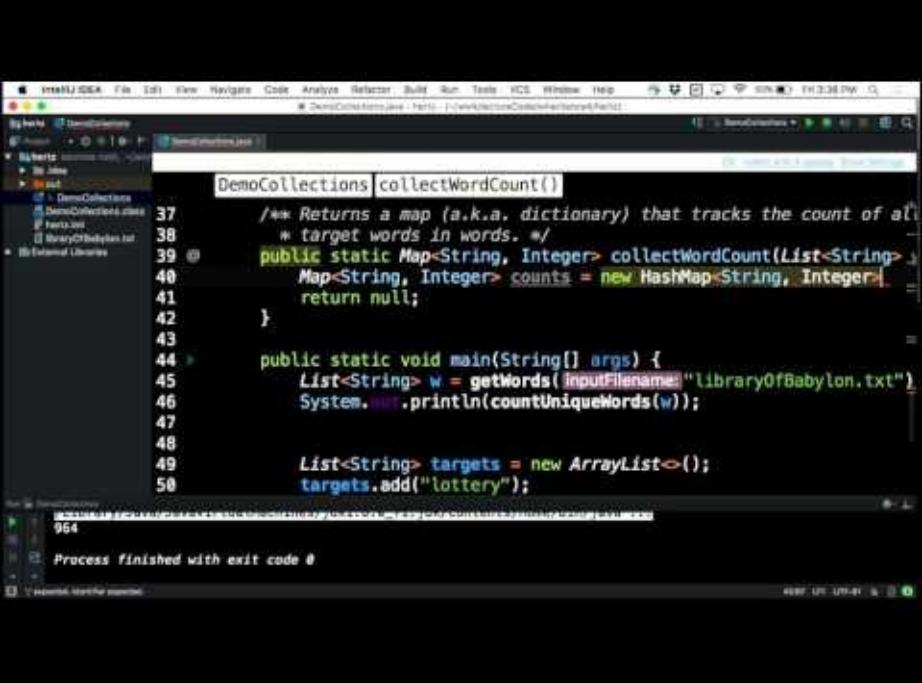
[Video link](#)

We used a list for the first exercise and set for the second.

```
public static List<String> getWords(String inputFileName) {
    List<String> lst = new ArrayList<String>();
    In in = new In();
    while (!in.isEmpty()) {
        lst.add(in.readString()); //optionally, define a cleanString() method that cle
        ans the string first.
    }
    return lst;
}

public static int countUniqueWords(List<String> words) {
    Set<String> ss = new HashSet<>();
    for (String s : words) {
        ss.add(s);
    }
    return ss.size();
}
```

Exercise 4.4.3 Write a method `collectWordCount` that takes in a `List<String>` targets and a `List<String>` words and finds the number of times each target word appears in the word list.



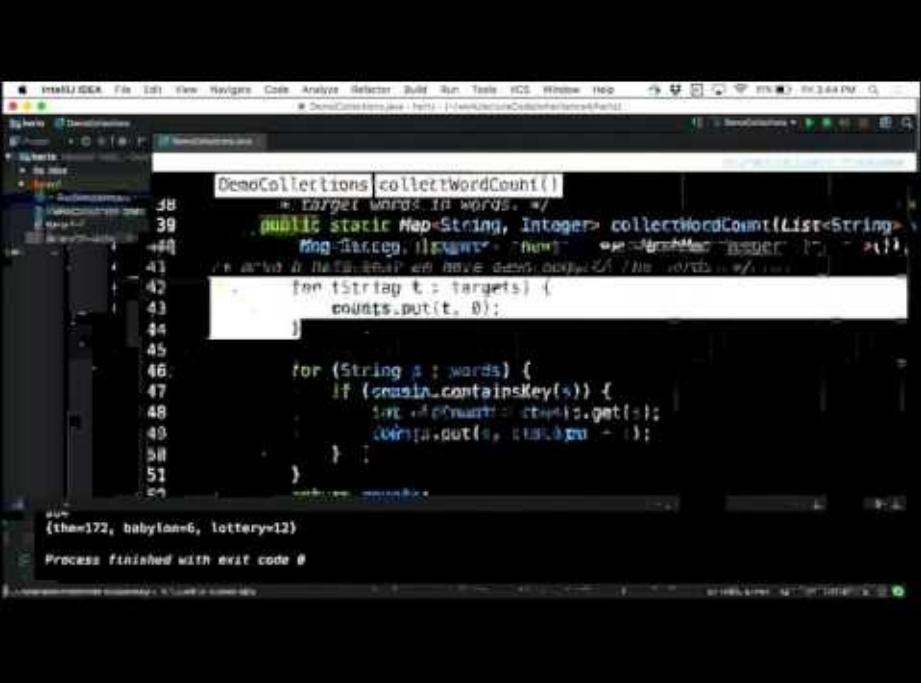
The screenshot shows an IDE interface with a code editor containing Java code. The code defines a class named `DemoCollections` with a static method `collectWordCount` that takes a list of strings and returns a map of word counts. It also contains a main method that reads words from a file and prints the count of unique words. The code is annotated with Javadoc-style comments.

```

37     /** Returns a map (a.k.a. dictionary) that tracks the count of all
38      * target words in words. */
39     public static Map<String, Integer> collectWordCount(List<String> words) {
40         Map<String, Integer> counts = new HashMap<String, Integer>();
41         return null;
42     }
43
44     public static void main(String[] args) {
45         List<String> w = getWords(inputFilename: "libraryOfBabylon.txt");
46         System.out.println(countUniqueWords(w));
47
48         List<String> targets = new ArrayList<>();
49         targets.add("lottery");
50     }
51
52     /**
53      * Returns the number of unique words in words.
54      */
55     private static int countUniqueWords(List<String> words) {
56         Set<String> uniqueWords = new HashSet<String>(words);
57         return uniqueWords.size();
58     }
59
60     /**
61      * Returns a list of words from the specified file.
62      */
63     private static List<String> getWords(String inputFilename) {
64         List<String> words = new ArrayList<>();
65         ...
66         return words;
67     }
68
69     /**
70      * Prints the count of words in words.
71      */
72     private static void printWordCounts(Map<String, Integer> counts) {
73         ...
74     }
75
76     /**
77      * Prints the count of unique words in words.
78      */
79     private static void printUniqueWordCounts(Map<String, Integer> counts) {
80         ...
81     }
82
83     /**
84      * Prints the count of words in words.
85      */
86     private static void printWordCounts(List<String> words) {
87         ...
88     }
89
90     /**
91      * Prints the count of unique words in words.
92      */
93     private static void printUniqueWordCounts(List<String> words) {
94         ...
95     }
96
97     /**
98      * Prints the count of words in words.
99      */
100     private static void printWordCounts(Set<String> words) {
101        ...
102    }
103
104    /**
105     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
106     */
107    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(Set<String> words) {
108        ...
109    }
110
111    /**
112     * Prints the count of words in words.
113     */
114    private static void printWordCounts(Map<String, Integer> counts) {
115        ...
116    }
117
118    /**
119     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
120     */
121    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(Map<String, Integer> counts) {
122        ...
123    }
124
125    /**
126     * Prints the count of words in words.
127     */
128    private static void printWordCounts(TreeMap<String, Integer> counts) {
129        ...
130    }
131
132    /**
133     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
134     */
135    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(TreeMap<String, Integer> counts) {
136        ...
137    }
138
139    /**
140     * Prints the count of words in words.
141     */
142    private static void printWordCounts(TreeSet<String> words) {
143        ...
144    }
145
146    /**
147     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
148     */
149    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(TreeSet<String> words) {
150        ...
151    }
152
153    /**
154     * Prints the count of words in words.
155     */
156    private static void printWordCounts(HashSet<String> words) {
157        ...
158    }
159
160    /**
161     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
162     */
163    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(HashSet<String> words) {
164        ...
165    }
166
167    /**
168     * Prints the count of words in words.
169     */
170    private static void printWordCounts(ArrayList<String> words) {
171        ...
172    }
173
174    /**
175     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
176     */
177    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(ArrayList<String> words) {
178        ...
179    }
180
181    /**
182     * Prints the count of words in words.
183     */
184    private static void printWordCounts(LinkedList<String> words) {
185        ...
186    }
187
188    /**
189     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
190     */
191    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(LinkedList<String> words) {
192        ...
193    }
194
195    /**
196     * Prints the count of words in words.
197     */
198    private static void printWordCounts(HashMap<String, Integer> counts) {
199        ...
200    }
201
202    /**
203     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
204     */
205    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(HashMap<String, Integer> counts) {
206        ...
207    }
208
209    /**
210     * Prints the count of words in words.
211     */
212    private static void printWordCounts(TreeMap<String, Integer> counts) {
213        ...
214    }
215
216    /**
217     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
218     */
219    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(TreeMap<String, Integer> counts) {
220        ...
221    }
222
223    /**
224     * Prints the count of words in words.
225     */
226    private static void printWordCounts(TreeSet<String> words) {
227        ...
228    }
229
230    /**
231     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
232     */
233    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(TreeSet<String> words) {
234        ...
235    }
236
237    /**
238     * Prints the count of words in words.
239     */
240    private static void printWordCounts(HashSet<String> words) {
241        ...
242    }
243
244    /**
245     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
246     */
247    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(HashSet<String> words) {
248        ...
249    }
250
251    /**
252     * Prints the count of words in words.
253     */
254    private static void printWordCounts(ArrayList<String> words) {
255        ...
256    }
257
258    /**
259     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
260     */
261    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(ArrayList<String> words) {
262        ...
263    }
264
265    /**
266     * Prints the count of words in words.
267     */
268    private static void printWordCounts(LinkedList<String> words) {
269        ...
270    }
271
272    /**
273     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
274     */
275    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(LinkedList<String> words) {
276        ...
277    }
278
279    /**
280     * Prints the count of words in words.
281     */
282    private static void printWordCounts(HashMap<String, Integer> counts) {
283        ...
284    }
285
286    /**
287     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
288     */
289    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(HashMap<String, Integer> counts) {
290        ...
291    }
292
293    /**
294     * Prints the count of words in words.
295     */
296    private static void printWordCounts(TreeMap<String, Integer> counts) {
297        ...
298    }
299
300    /**
301     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
302     */
303    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(TreeMap<String, Integer> counts) {
304        ...
305    }
306
307    /**
308     * Prints the count of words in words.
309     */
310    private static void printWordCounts(TreeSet<String> words) {
311        ...
312    }
313
314    /**
315     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
316     */
317    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(TreeSet<String> words) {
318        ...
319    }
320
321    /**
322     * Prints the count of words in words.
323     */
324    private static void printWordCounts(HashSet<String> words) {
325        ...
326    }
327
328    /**
329     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
330     */
331    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(HashSet<String> words) {
332        ...
333    }
334
335    /**
336     * Prints the count of words in words.
337     */
338    private static void printWordCounts(ArrayList<String> words) {
339        ...
340    }
341
342    /**
343     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
344     */
345    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(ArrayList<String> words) {
346        ...
347    }
348
349    /**
350     * Prints the count of words in words.
351     */
352    private static void printWordCounts(LinkedList<String> words) {
353        ...
354    }
355
356    /**
357     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
358     */
359    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(LinkedList<String> words) {
360        ...
361    }
362
363    /**
364     * Prints the count of words in words.
365     */
366    private static void printWordCounts(HashMap<String, Integer> counts) {
367        ...
368    }
369
370    /**
371     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
372     */
373    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(HashMap<String, Integer> counts) {
374        ...
375    }
376
377    /**
378     * Prints the count of words in words.
379     */
380    private static void printWordCounts(TreeMap<String, Integer> counts) {
381        ...
382    }
383
384    /**
385     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
386     */
387    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(TreeMap<String, Integer> counts) {
388        ...
389    }
390
391    /**
392     * Prints the count of words in words.
393     */
394    private static void printWordCounts(TreeSet<String> words) {
395        ...
396    }
397
398    /**
399     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
400     */
401    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(TreeSet<String> words) {
402        ...
403    }
404
405    /**
406     * Prints the count of words in words.
407     */
408    private static void printWordCounts(HashSet<String> words) {
409        ...
410    }
411
412    /**
413     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
414     */
415    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(HashSet<String> words) {
416        ...
417    }
418
419    /**
420     * Prints the count of words in words.
421     */
422    private static void printWordCounts(ArrayList<String> words) {
423        ...
424    }
425
426    /**
427     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
428     */
429    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(ArrayList<String> words) {
430        ...
431    }
432
433    /**
434     * Prints the count of words in words.
435     */
436    private static void printWordCounts(LinkedList<String> words) {
437        ...
438    }
439
440    /**
441     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
442     */
443    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(LinkedList<String> words) {
444        ...
445    }
446
447    /**
448     * Prints the count of words in words.
449     */
450    private static void printWordCounts(HashMap<String, Integer> counts) {
451        ...
452    }
453
454    /**
455     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
456     */
457    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(HashMap<String, Integer> counts) {
458        ...
459    }
460
461    /**
462     * Prints the count of words in words.
463     */
464    private static void printWordCounts(TreeMap<String, Integer> counts) {
465        ...
466    }
467
468    /**
469     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
470     */
471    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(TreeMap<String, Integer> counts) {
472        ...
473    }
474
475    /**
476     * Prints the count of words in words.
477     */
478    private static void printWordCounts(TreeSet<String> words) {
479        ...
480    }
481
482    /**
483     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
484     */
485    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(TreeSet<String> words) {
486        ...
487    }
488
489    /**
490     * Prints the count of words in words.
491     */
492    private static void printWordCounts(HashSet<String> words) {
493        ...
494    }
495
496    /**
497     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
498     */
499    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(HashSet<String> words) {
500        ...
501    }
502
503    /**
504     * Prints the count of words in words.
505     */
506    private static void printWordCounts(ArrayList<String> words) {
507        ...
508    }
509
510    /**
511     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
512     */
513    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(ArrayList<String> words) {
514        ...
515    }
516
517    /**
518     * Prints the count of words in words.
519     */
520    private static void printWordCounts(LinkedList<String> words) {
521        ...
522    }
523
524    /**
525     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
526     */
527    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(LinkedList<String> words) {
528        ...
529    }
530
531    /**
532     * Prints the count of words in words.
533     */
534    private static void printWordCounts(HashMap<String, Integer> counts) {
535        ...
536    }
537
538    /**
539     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
540     */
541    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(HashMap<String, Integer> counts) {
542        ...
543    }
544
545    /**
546     * Prints the count of words in words.
547     */
548    private static void printWordCounts(TreeMap<String, Integer> counts) {
549        ...
550    }
551
552    /**
553     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
554     */
555    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(TreeMap<String, Integer> counts) {
556        ...
557    }
558
559    /**
560     * Prints the count of words in words.
561     */
562    private static void printWordCounts(TreeSet<String> words) {
563        ...
564    }
565
566    /**
567     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
568     */
569    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(TreeSet<String> words) {
570        ...
571    }
572
573    /**
574     * Prints the count of words in words.
575     */
576    private static void printWordCounts(HashSet<String> words) {
577        ...
578    }
579
580    /**
581     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
582     */
583    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(HashSet<String> words) {
584        ...
585    }
586
587    /**
588     * Prints the count of words in words.
589     */
590    private static void printWordCounts(ArrayList<String> words) {
591        ...
592    }
593
594    /**
595     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
596     */
597    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(ArrayList<String> words) {
598        ...
599    }
599
600    /**
601     * Prints the count of words in words.
602     */
603    private static void printWordCounts(LinkedList<String> words) {
604        ...
605    }
606
607    /**
608     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
609     */
610    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(LinkedList<String> words) {
611        ...
612    }
613
614    /**
615     * Prints the count of words in words.
616     */
617    private static void printWordCounts(HashMap<String, Integer> counts) {
618        ...
619    }
620
621    /**
622     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
623     */
624    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(HashMap<String, Integer> counts) {
625        ...
626    }
627
628    /**
629     * Prints the count of words in words.
630     */
631    private static void printWordCounts(TreeMap<String, Integer> counts) {
632        ...
633    }
634
635    /**
636     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
637     */
638    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(TreeMap<String, Integer> counts) {
639        ...
640    }
640
641    /**
642     * Prints the count of words in words.
643     */
644    private static void printWordCounts(TreeSet<String> words) {
645        ...
646    }
647
648    /**
649     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
650     */
651    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(TreeSet<String> words) {
652        ...
653    }
654
655    /**
656     * Prints the count of words in words.
657     */
658    private static void printWordCounts(HashSet<String> words) {
659        ...
660    }
661
662    /**
663     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
664     */
665    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(HashSet<String> words) {
666        ...
667    }
668
669    /**
670     * Prints the count of words in words.
671     */
672    private static void printWordCounts(ArrayList<String> words) {
673        ...
674    }
675
676    /**
677     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
678     */
679    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(ArrayList<String> words) {
680        ...
681    }
682
683    /**
684     * Prints the count of words in words.
685     */
686    private static void printWordCounts(LinkedList<String> words) {
687        ...
688    }
689
690    /**
691     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
692     */
693    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(LinkedList<String> words) {
694        ...
695    }
696
697    /**
698     * Prints the count of words in words.
699     */
700    private static void printWordCounts(HashMap<String, Integer> counts) {
701        ...
702    }
703
704    /**
705     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
706     */
707    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(HashMap<String, Integer> counts) {
708        ...
709    }
710
711    /**
712     * Prints the count of words in words.
713     */
714    private static void printWordCounts(TreeMap<String, Integer> counts) {
715        ...
716    }
717
718    /**
719     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
720     */
721    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(TreeMap<String, Integer> counts) {
722        ...
723    }
724
725    /**
726     * Prints the count of words in words.
727     */
728    private static void printWordCounts(TreeSet<String> words) {
729        ...
730    }
731
732    /**
733     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
734     */
735    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(TreeSet<String> words) {
736        ...
737    }
738
739    /**
740     * Prints the count of words in words.
741     */
742    private static void printWordCounts(HashSet<String> words) {
743        ...
744    }
745
746    /**
747     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
748     */
749    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(HashSet<String> words) {
750        ...
751    }
752
753    /**
754     * Prints the count of words in words.
755     */
756    private static void printWordCounts(ArrayList<String> words) {
757        ...
758    }
759
760    /**
761     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
762     */
763    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(ArrayList<String> words) {
764        ...
765    }
766
767    /**
768     * Prints the count of words in words.
769     */
770    private static void printWordCounts(LinkedList<String> words) {
771        ...
772    }
773
774    /**
775     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
776     */
777    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(LinkedList<String> words) {
778        ...
779    }
780
781    /**
782     * Prints the count of words in words.
783     */
784    private static void printWordCounts(HashMap<String, Integer> counts) {
785        ...
786    }
787
788    /**
789     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
790     */
791    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(HashMap<String, Integer> counts) {
792        ...
793    }
794
795    /**
796     * Prints the count of words in words.
797     */
798    private static void printWordCounts(TreeMap<String, Integer> counts) {
799        ...
800    }
801
802    /**
803     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
804     */
805    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(TreeMap<String, Integer> counts) {
806        ...
807    }
808
809    /**
810     * Prints the count of words in words.
811     */
812    private static void printWordCounts(TreeSet<String> words) {
813        ...
814    }
815
816    /**
817     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
818     */
819    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(TreeSet<String> words) {
820        ...
821    }
822
823    /**
824     * Prints the count of words in words.
825     */
826    private static void printWordCounts(HashSet<String> words) {
827        ...
828    }
829
830    /**
831     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
832     */
833    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(HashSet<String> words) {
834        ...
835    }
836
837    /**
838     * Prints the count of words in words.
839     */
840    private static void printWordCounts(ArrayList<String> words) {
841        ...
842    }
843
844    /**
845     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
846     */
847    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(ArrayList<String> words) {
848        ...
849    }
850
851    /**
852     * Prints the count of words in words.
853     */
854    private static void printWordCounts(LinkedList<String> words) {
855        ...
856    }
857
858    /**
859     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
860     */
861    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(LinkedList<String> words) {
862        ...
863    }
864
865    /**
866     * Prints the count of words in words.
867     */
868    private static void printWordCounts(HashMap<String, Integer> counts) {
869        ...
870    }
871
872    /**
873     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
874     */
875    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(HashMap<String, Integer> counts) {
876        ...
877    }
878
879    /**
880     * Prints the count of words in words.
881     */
882    private static void printWordCounts(TreeMap<String, Integer> counts) {
883        ...
884    }
885
886    /**
887     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
888     */
889    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(TreeMap<String, Integer> counts) {
890        ...
891    }
892
893    /**
894     * Prints the count of words in words.
895     */
896    private static void printWordCounts(TreeSet<String> words) {
897        ...
898    }
899
900    /**
901     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
902     */
903    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(TreeSet<String> words) {
904        ...
905    }
906
907    /**
908     * Prints the count of words in words.
909     */
910    private static void printWordCounts(HashSet<String> words) {
911        ...
912    }
913
914    /**
915     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
916     */
917    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(HashSet<String> words) {
918        ...
919    }
920
921    /**
922     * Prints the count of words in words.
923     */
924    private static void printWordCounts(ArrayList<String> words) {
925        ...
926    }
927
928    /**
929     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
930     */
931    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(ArrayList<String> words) {
932        ...
933    }
934
935    /**
936     * Prints the count of words in words.
937     */
938    private static void printWordCounts(LinkedList<String> words) {
939        ...
940    }
941
942    /**
943     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
944     */
945    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(LinkedList<String> words) {
946        ...
947    }
948
949    /**
950     * Prints the count of words in words.
951     */
952    private static void printWordCounts(HashMap<String, Integer> counts) {
953        ...
954    }
955
956    /**
957     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
958     */
959    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(HashMap<String, Integer> counts) {
960        ...
961    }
962
963    /**
964     * Prints the count of words in words.
965     */
966    private static void printWordCounts(TreeMap<String, Integer> counts) {
967        ...
968    }
969
970    /**
971     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
972     */
973    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(TreeMap<String, Integer> counts) {
974        ...
975    }
976
977    /**
978     * Prints the count of words in words.
979     */
980    private static void printWordCounts(TreeSet<String> words) {
981        ...
982    }
983
984    /**
985     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
986     */
987    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(TreeSet<String> words) {
988        ...
989    }
990
991    /**
992     * Prints the count of words in words.
993     */
994    private static void printWordCounts(HashSet<String> words) {
995        ...
996    }
997
998    /**
999     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
1000    */
1001    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(HashSet<String> words) {
1002        ...
1003    }
1004
1005    /**
1006     * Prints the count of words in words.
1007     */
1008    private static void printWordCounts(ArrayList<String> words) {
1009        ...
1010    }
1011
1012    /**
1013     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
1014     */
1015    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(ArrayList<String> words) {
1016        ...
1017    }
1018
1019    /**
1020     * Prints the count of words in words.
1021     */
1022    private static void printWordCounts(LinkedList<String> words) {
1023        ...
1024    }
1025
1026    /**
1027     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
1028     */
1029    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(LinkedList<String> words) {
1030        ...
1031    }
1032
1033    /**
1034     * Prints the count of words in words.
1035     */
1036    private static void printWordCounts(HashMap<String, Integer> counts) {
1037        ...
1038    }
1039
1040    /**
1041     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
1042     */
1043    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(HashMap<String, Integer> counts) {
1044        ...
1045    }
1046
1047    /**
1048     * Prints the count of words in words.
1049     */
1050    private static void printWordCounts(TreeMap<String, Integer> counts) {
1051        ...
1052    }
1053
1054    /**
1055     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
1056     */
1057    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(TreeMap<String, Integer> counts) {
1058        ...
1059    }
1060
1061    /**
1062     * Prints the count of words in words.
1063     */
1064    private static void printWordCounts(TreeSet<String> words) {
1065        ...
1066    }
1067
1068    /**
1069     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
1070     */
1071    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(TreeSet<String> words) {
1072        ...
1073    }
1074
1075    /**
1076     * Prints the count of words in words.
1077     */
1078    private static void printWordCounts(HashSet<String> words) {
1079        ...
1080    }
1081
1082    /**
1083     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
1084     */
1085    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(HashSet<String> words) {
1086        ...
1087    }
1088
1089    /**
1090     * Prints the count of words in words.
1091     */
1092    private static void printWordCounts(ArrayList<String> words) {
1093        ...
1094    }
1095
1096    /**
1097     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
1098     */
1099    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(ArrayList<String> words) {
1100        ...
1101    }
1102
1103    /**
1104     * Prints the count of words in words.
1105     */
1106    private static void printWordCounts(LinkedList<String> words) {
1107        ...
1108    }
1109
1110    /**
1111     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
1112     */
1113    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(LinkedList<String> words) {
1114        ...
1115    }
1116
1117    /**
1118     * Prints the count of words in words.
1119     */
1120    private static void printWordCounts(HashMap<String, Integer> counts) {
1121        ...
1122    }
1123
1124    /**
1125     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
1126     */
1127    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(HashMap<String, Integer> counts) {
1128        ...
1129    }
1130
1131    /**
1132     * Prints the count of words in words.
1133     */
1134    private static void printWordCounts(TreeMap<String, Integer> counts) {
1135        ...
1136    }
1137
1138    /**
1139     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
1140     */
1141    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(TreeMap<String, Integer> counts) {
1142        ...
1143    }
1144
1145    /**
1146     * Prints the count of words in words.
1147     */
1148    private static void printWordCounts(TreeSet<String> words) {
1149        ...
1150    }
1151
1152    /**
1153     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
1154     */
1155    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(TreeSet<String> words) {
1156        ...
1157    }
1158
1159    /**
1160     * Prints the count of words in words.
1161     */
1162    private static void printWordCounts(HashSet<String> words) {
1163        ...
1164    }
1165
1166    /**
1167     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
1168     */
1169    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(HashSet<String> words) {
1170        ...
1171    }
1172
1173    /**
1174     * Prints the count of words in words.
1175     */
1176    private static void printWordCounts(ArrayList<String> words) {
1177        ...
1178    }
1179
1180    /**
1181     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
1182     */
1183    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(ArrayList<String> words) {
1184        ...
1185    }
1186
1187    /**
1188     * Prints the count of words in words.
1189     */
1190    private static void printWordCounts(LinkedList<String> words) {
1191        ...
1192    }
1193
1194    /**
1195     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
1196     */
1197    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(LinkedList<String> words) {
1198        ...
1199    }
1200
1201    /**
1202     * Prints the count of words in words.
1203     */
1204    private static void printWordCounts(HashMap<String, Integer> counts) {
1205        ...
1206    }
1207
1208    /**
1209     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
1210     */
1211    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(HashMap<String, Integer> counts) {
1212        ...
1213    }
1214
1215    /**
1216     * Prints the count of words in words.
1217     */
1218    private static void printWordCounts(TreeMap<String, Integer> counts) {
1219        ...
1220    }
1221
1222    /**
1223     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
1224     */
1225    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(TreeMap<String, Integer> counts) {
1226        ...
1227    }
1228
1229    /**
1230     * Prints the count of words in words.
1231     */
1232    private static void printWordCounts(TreeSet<String> words) {
1233        ...
1234    }
1235
1236    /**
1237     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
1238     */
1239    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(TreeSet<String> words) {
1240        ...
1241    }
1242
1243    /**
1244     * Prints the count of words in words.
1245     */
1246    private static void printWordCounts(HashSet<String> words) {
1247        ...
1248    }
1249
1250    /**
1251     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
1252     */
1253    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(HashSet<String> words) {
1254        ...
1255    }
1256
1257    /**
1258     * Prints the count of words in words.
1259     */
1260    private static void printWordCounts(ArrayList<String> words) {
1261        ...
1262    }
1263
1264    /**
1265     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
1266     */
1267    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(ArrayList<String> words) {
1268        ...
1269    }
1270
1271    /**
1272     * Prints the count of words in words.
1273     */
1274    private static void printWordCounts(LinkedList<String> words) {
1275        ...
1276    }
1277
1278    /**
1279     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
1280     */
1281    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(LinkedList<String> words) {
1282        ...
1283    }
1284
1285    /**
1286     * Prints the count of words in words.
1287     */
1288    private static void printWordCounts(HashMap<String, Integer> counts) {
1289        ...
1290    }
1291
1292    /**
1293     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
1294     */
1295    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(HashMap<String, Integer> counts) {
1296        ...
1297    }
1298
1299    /**
1300     * Prints the count of words in words.
1301     */
1302    private static void printWordCounts(TreeMap<String, Integer> counts) {
1303        ...
1304    }
1305
1306    /**
1307     * Prints the count of unique words in words.
1308     */
1309    private static void printUniqueWordCounts(TreeMap<String,
```

In the diagram above, the white boxes are interfaces. The blue boxes are concrete classes.

Java vs Python



The screenshot shows an IDE interface with a Java file named `DemoCollections.java` open. The code implements a static method `collectWordCount` that takes a list of words and a list of targets, and returns a map of word counts. The code uses a `for` loop to iterate over the words and another `for` loop to iterate over the targets, updating the count for each target word. The IDE's code editor highlights the current line of code, and the status bar at the bottom shows the command prompt and exit code information.

```

public static Map<String, Integer>
    collectWordCount(List<String> words, List<String> targets) {
    Map<String, Integer> wordCounts = new HashMap<>();
    for (String s : targets) {
        wordCounts.put(s, 0);
    }
    for (String s : words) {
        if (wordCounts.containsKey(s)) {
            int oldCount = wordCounts.get(s);
            wordCounts.put(s, oldCount + 1);
        }
    }
    return wordCounts;
}

```

[Video link](#)

Java is pretty verbose. The java code below looks a lot more cumbersome than the corresponding python code.

```

public static Map<String, Integer>
    collectWordCount(List<String> words, List<String> targets) {
    Map<String, Integer> wordCounts = new HashMap<>();
    for (String s : targets) {
        wordCounts.put(s, 0);
    }
    for (String s : words) {
        if (wordCounts.containsKey(s)) {
            int oldCount = wordCounts.get(s);
            wordCounts.put(s, oldCount + 1);
        }
    }
    return wordCounts;
}

```

```
def find_word_count(words, targets):
    word_counts = {}
    for s in targets:
        word_counts[s] = 0

    for s in words:
        if s in word_counts:
            word_counts[s] += 1

    return word_counts
```

But, Java has its upsides too! It gives you a lot of choices and freedom. For example, python only has one dictionary type which is declared using curly brackets {}. With Java, if you want to use an ADT like a Map, you can choose what kind of map you want: a Hashmap? a Treemap? etc.

We like Java in 61B! Here are some reasons why:

- Arguably, takes less time to write programs, due to features like:
 - Static types (provides type checking and helps guide programmer).
 - Bias towards interface inheritance leading to cleaner subtype polymorphism.
 - Access control modifiers make abstraction barriers more solid.
- More efficient code, due to features like:
 - Ability to have more control over engineering tradeoffs.
 - Single valued arrays lead to better performance.
- Basic data structures more closely resemble underlying hardware:
 - Would be weird to do ArrayDeque in Python, since there is no need for array resizing. However, in hardware (see 61C), variable length arrays don't exist.

Abstract classes

Example (From Oracle's Abstract Class Tutorial)

```

public abstract class GraphicObject {
    public int x, y;
    ...
    public void moveTo(int newX, int newY) { ... }
    public abstract void draw();
    public abstract void resize();
}

public class Circle extends GraphicObject {
    public void draw() { ... }
    public void resize() { ... }
}

```

```

GraphicObject
  +-- Circle
  +-- Square

```

Implementations must override ALL abstract methods.

[Video link](#)

We've seen interfaces that can do a lot of cool things! They allow you to take advantage of interface inheritance and implementation inheritance. As a refresher, these are the qualities of interfaces:

- All methods must be public.
- All variables must be public static final.
- Cannot be instantiated
- All methods are by default abstract unless specified to be `default`
- Can implement more than one interface per class

We will now introduce a new class that lies somewhere in between interfaces and concrete classes: the abstract class. Below are the characteristics of abstract classes:

- Methods can be public or private
- Can have any types of variables
- Cannot be instantiated
- Methods are by default concrete unless specified to be `abstract`
- Can only implement one per class

Basically, abstract classes can do everything interfaces can do and more.

When in doubt, try to use interfaces in order to reduce complexity.

Packages

Packages

To address the fact that classes might share names: We won't follow this rule. Our code isn't intended for distribution.

- A package is a **namespace** that organizes classes and interfaces,
- Naming convention: Package name starts with website address (backwards).

```

package ug.joshh.animal;

public class Dog {
    private String name;
    private String breed;
    private double size;
}

```

Dog.java

If used from the outside, use entire **canonical name**:

```

ug.joshh.animal.Dog d =
    new ug.joshh.animal.Dog(...);

org.junit.Assert.assertEquals(5, 5);

```

If used from another class in same package (e.g. ug.joshh.animal.DogLauncher), can just use **simple name**.

[Video link](#)

Package names give **give a canonical name for everything**. Canonical means a *unique representation* for a thing.

Why? Well, in Java, we could have multiple classes with the same name. We need a way to differentiate between these different classes. In industry, this differentiation happens by appending the class to a website address (backwards) like below:

But... this means we have to type out that entire name every time we want to instantiate something of that class.

```
```ug.joshh.animal.Dog d = new ug.joshh.animal.Dog()
```

This is annoying. We can remedy this by importing the package.

```
import ug.joshh.animal
```

Now we can use dogs as we please.

This is just a brief preview of packages. We will get to more of this during later weeks of the course.



# Industrial Strength Syntax

In the previous parts of this book, we've talked about various data structures and the way that Java supports their implementation. In this chapter, we'll discuss a variety of supplementary topics that are used in industrial strength implementations of Java programs.

This is not meant to be a comprehensive guide to Java, but rather a highlight of features that are likely to be useful to you while working on this course.

## Automatic Conversions

### Autoboxing and Unboxing



Wrapper types and primitives can be used almost interchangeably.

- If Java code expects a wrapper type and gets a primitive, it is autoboxed.

<pre>public static void blah(Integer x) {     System.out.println(x); }</pre>	<pre>int x = 20; blah(x);</pre>
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------

- If the code expects a primitive and gets a wrapper, it is unboxed.

<pre>public static void blahPrimitive(int x) {     System.out.println(x); }</pre>	<pre>Integer x = new Integer(20); blahPrimitive(x);</pre>
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------

Some notes:

- Arrays are never autoboxed/unboxed, e.g. an `Integer[]` cannot be used in place of an `int[]` (or vice versa).
- Autoboxing / unboxing incurs a measurable performance impact!
- Wrapper types use MUCH more memory than primitive types.

[Video link](#)

## Autoboxing and Unboxing

As we saw in the previous chapter, we can define classes which have generic type variables using the `<>` syntax, e.g. `LinkedListDeque<Item>` and `ArrayDeque<Item>`. When we want to instantiate an object whose class uses generics, we have to substitute the generic with a concrete class, i.e. specify what type of items are going to go into that class.

Recall that Java has 8 primitive types -- all other types are reference types. One particular feature of Java is that we cannot provide a primitive type as an actual type argument for generics, e.g. `ArrayDeque<int>` is a syntax error. Instead, we use `ArrayDeque<Integer>`. For

each primitive type, we use the corresponding reference type as shown in the table below. These reference types are called "wrapper classes".

Primitive	Class
byte	Byte
short	Short
int	Integer
long	Long
float	Float
double	Double
boolean	Boolean
char	Character

Naively, we'd assume that this would result in having to manually convert between primitive and reference types when using a generic data structure. For example, we might imagine having to do the following:

```
public class BasicArrayList {
 public static void main(String[] args) {
 ArrayList<Integer> L = new ArrayList<Integer>();
 L.add(new Integer(5));
 L.add(new Integer(6));

 /* Use the Integer.valueOf method to convert to int */
 int first = L.get(0).valueOf();
 }
}
```

Writing code like above can be a bit annoying. Luckily, Java can implicitly convert between primitive and wrapper types, so the code below works just fine:

```
public class BasicArrayList {
 public static void main(String[] args) {
 ArrayList<Integer> L = new ArrayList<Integer>();
 L.add(5);
 L.add(6);
 int first = L.get(0);
 }
}
```

The reason this works is that Java will automatically "box" and "unbox" values between a primitive type and its corresponding reference type. That is, if Java expects a wrapper type, like `Integer`, and you provide a primitive type, like `int`, it will "autobox" the integer. For example, if we have the function:

```
public static void blah(Integer x) {
 System.out.println(x);
}
```

And we call it using:

```
int x = 20;
blah(x);
```

Then Java implicitly creates a new `Integer` with value 20, resulting in a call to equivalent to calling `blah(new Integer(20))`. This process is known as autoboxing.

Likewise, if Java expected a primitive:

```
public static void blahPrimitive(int x) {
 System.out.println(x);
}
```

but you give it a value of the corresponding wrapper type:

```
Integer x = new Integer(20);
blahPrimitive(x);
```

It will automatically unbox the integer, equivalent to calling the `Integer` class's `valueOf` method.

## Caveats

There are a few things to keep in mind when it comes to autoboxing and unboxing:

- Arrays are never autoboxed or auto-unboxed, e.g. if you have an array of integers `int[] x`, and try to put its address into a variable of type `Integer[]`, the compiler will not allow your program to compile.
- Autoboxing and unboxing also has a measurable performance impact. That is, code that relies on autoboxing and unboxing will be slower than code that eschews such automatic conversions.

- Additionally, wrapper types use much more memory than primitive types. On most modern computers, not only must your code hold a 64 bit reference to the object, but every object also requires 64 bits of overhead used to store things like the dynamic type of the object.
  - For more on memory usage, see [this link](#) or [this link](#).

## Widening

### Another Type of Conversion: Primitive Widening



A similar thing happens when moving from a primitive type with a narrower range to a wider range.

- In this case, we say the value is “widened”.
- Code below is fine since double is wider than int.

```
public static void blahDouble(double x) {
 System.out.println("double: " + x);
}
int x = 20;
blahDouble(x);
```

To move from a wider type to a narrower type, must use casting:

```
public static void blahInt(int x) {
 System.out.println("int: " + x);
}
double x = 20;
blahInt((int) x);
```

Full details here: <http://docs.oracle.com/javase/specs/jls/se8/html/jls-5.html>

## Video link

Similar to the autoboxing/unboxing process, Java will also automatically widen a primitive if needed. Specifically, if a program expects a primitive of type T2 and is given a variable of type T1, and type T2 can take on a wider range of values than T1, the variable will be implicitly cast to type T2.

For example, doubles in Java are wider than ints. If we have the function shown below:

```
public static void blahDouble(double x) {
 System.out.println("double: " + x);
}
```

We can call it with an int argument:

```
int x = 20;
blahDouble(x);
```

The effect is the same as if we'd done `blahDouble((double) x)`. Thanks Java!

If you want to go from a wider type to a narrower type, you must manually cast. For example, if you have the method below:

```
public static void blahInt(int x) {
 System.out.println("int: " + x);
}
```

Then we'd need to use a cast if we want to call this method using a double value, e.g.

```
double x = 20;
blahInt((int) x);
```

For more details on widening, including a full description of what types are wider than others, see [the official Java documentation](#).

# Immutability

## Immutable Data Types

An immutable data type is one for which an instance cannot change in any observable way after instantiation.

Examples:

- Mutable: `ArrayDeque`, `Planet`.
- Immutable: `Integer`, `String`, `Date`.

```
public class Date {
 public final int month;
 public final int day;
 public final int year;
 private boolean contrived = true;
 public Date(int m, int d, int y) {
 month = m; day = d; year = y;
 }
}
```

The `final` keyword will help the compiler ensure immutability.

- `final` variable means you will assign a value once (either in constructor or class or in initializer).
- Not necessary to have `final` to be immutable (e.g. `Dog` with private variables).

## Video link

The notion of immutability is one of the things you might never have known existed, but that can greatly simplify your life once you realize it's a thing (sort of like the realization you get as an adult that nobody *really* knows what they're doing, at least when they first start doing something new).

An immutable data type is a data type whose instances cannot change in any observable way after instantiation.

For example, `String` objects in Java are immutable. No matter what, if you have an instance of `String`, you can call any method on that `String`, but it will remain completely unchanged. This means that when `String` objects are concatenated, neither of the original `String`s are modified -- instead, a totally new `String` object is returned.

Mutable datatypes include objects like `ArrayDeque` and `Planet`. We can add or remove items from an `ArrayDeque`, which are observable changes. Similarly, the velocity and position of a `Planet` may change over time.

Any data type with non-private variables is mutable, unless those variables are declared `final` (this is not the only condition for mutability -- there are many other ways of defining a data type so that it is mutable). This is because an outside method can change the value of non-private variables, leading to observable change.

The `final` keyword is a keyword for variables that prevents the variable from being changed after its first assignment. For example, consider the `Date` class below:

```
public class Date {
 public final int month;
 public final int day;
 public final int year;
 private boolean contrived = true;
 public Date(int m, int d, int y) {
 month = m; day = d; year = y;
 }
}
```

This class is immutable. After instantiating a `Date`, there is no way to change the value of any of its properties.

Advantages of immutable data types:

- Prevents bugs and makes debugging easier because properties cannot change ever
- You can count on objects to have a certain behavior/trait

Disadvantages:

- You need to create a new object in order to change a property

Caveats:

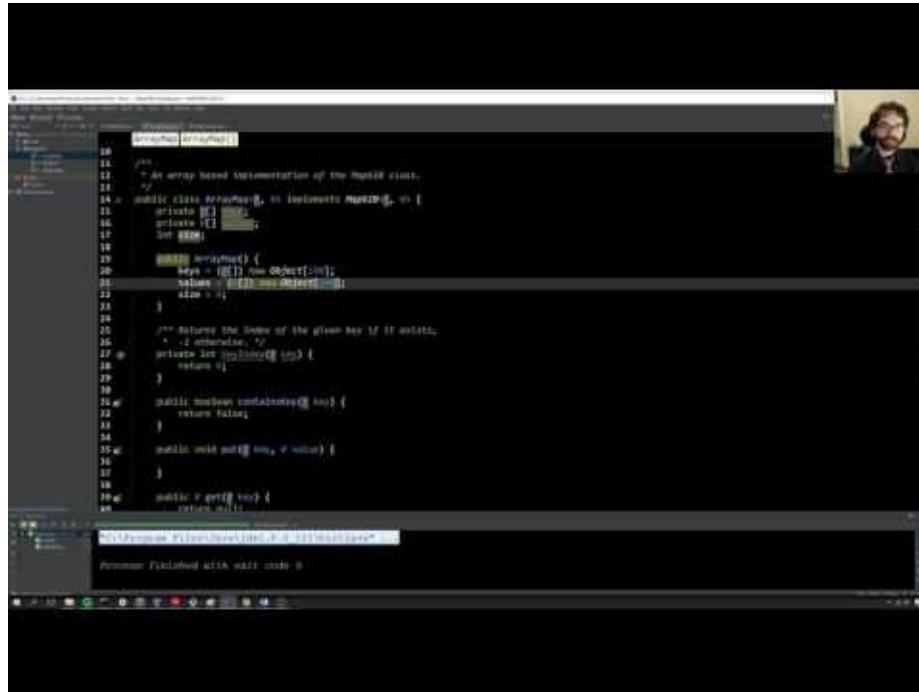
- Declaring a reference as **final** does not make the object that reference is pointing to immutable! For example, consider the following code snippet:

```
public final ArrayDeque<String>() deque = new ArrayDeque<String>();
```

The `deque` variable is final and can never be reassigned, but the array deque object it's pointing to can change! ArrayDeques are always mutable!

- Using the Reflection API, it is possible to make changes even to private variables! Our notion of immutability assumes that we're not using any of the special capabilities of this library.

# Creating Another Generic Class



[Video link](#)

Now that we've created generic lists, such as `DLLists` and `ALists`, let's move on to a different data type: maps. Maps let you associate keys with values, for example, the statement "Josh's score on the exam is 0" could be stored in a Map that associates students to their exam scores. A map is the Java equivalent of a Python dictionary.

We're going to be creating the `ArrayMap` class, which implements the `Map61B` Interface, a restricted version of Java's built-in `Map` interface. `ArrayMap` will have the following methods:

- `put(key, value)`: Associate key with value.
- `containsKey(key)`: Checks if map contains the key.
- `get(key)`: Returns value, assuming key exists.
- `keys()`: Returns a list of all keys.
- `size()`: Returns number of keys.

For this exercise, we will ignore resizing. One thing to note about the `Map61B` interface (and the Java `Map` interface in general) is that each key can only have one value at a time. If Josh is mapped to 0, and then we say "Oh wait, there was a mistake! Josh actually got 100 on the exam," we erase the value 0 that's Josh maps to and replace it with 100.

Feel free to try building an `ArrayMap` on your own, but for reference, the full implementation is below.

```
package Map61B;

import java.util.List;
import java.util.ArrayList;

/**
 * An array-based implementation of Map61B.
 */
public class ArrayMap<K, V> implements Map61B<K, V> {

 private K[] keys;
 private V[] values;
 int size;

 public ArrayMap() {
 keys = (K[]) new Object[100];
 values = (V[]) new Object[100];
 size = 0;
 }

 /**
 * Returns the index of the key, if it exists. Otherwise returns -1.
 */
 private int keyIndex(K key) {
 for (int i = 0; i < size; i++) {
 if (keys[i].equals(key)) {
 return i;
 }
 }
 return -1;
 }

 public boolean containsKey(K key) {
 int index = keyIndex(key);
 return index > -1;
 }

 public void put(K key, V value) {
 int index = keyIndex(key);
 if (index == -1) {
 keys[size] = key;
 values[size] = value;
 size += 1;
 } else {
 values[index] = value;
 }
 }

 public V get(K key) {
 int index = keyIndex(key);
 return values[index];
 }
}
```

```
public int size() {
 return size;
}

public List<K> keys() {
 List<K> keyList = new ArrayList<>();
 for (int i = 0; i < keys.length; i++) {
 keyList.add(keys[i]);
 }
 return keyList;
}
}
```

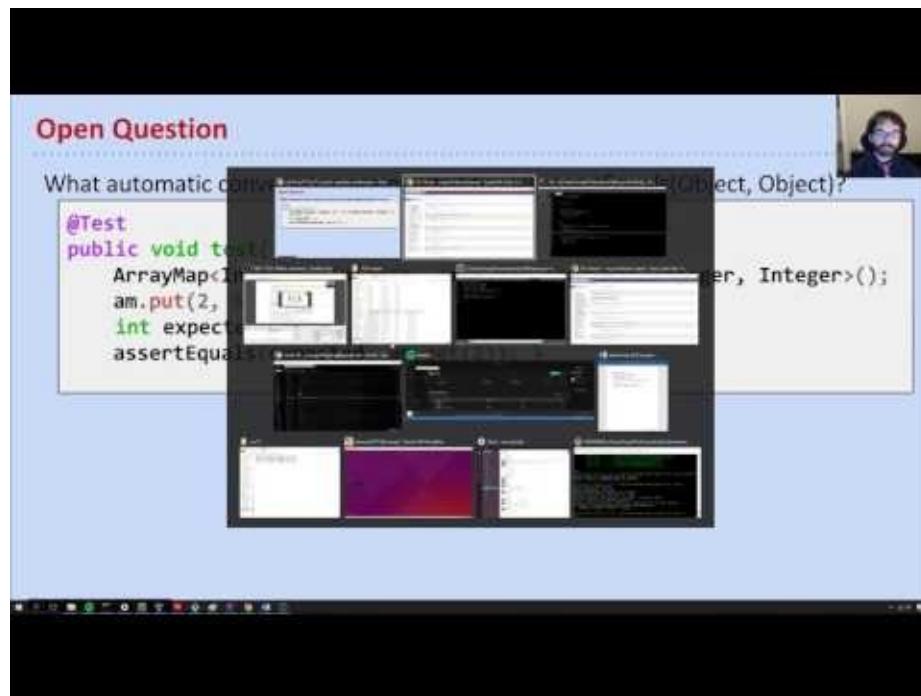
Note: the decision to name the generics `K` and `V` is arbitrary (but meant to be intuitive). We could have just as well replaced these generics with `Potato` and `Sauce`, or any other name. However, it's quite common to see generics in Java represented as a single uppercase letter, in this course and elsewhere.

There were a few interesting things here; looking at the top of the code, we stated `package Map61B;`. We will go over this a bit later, but for now just know that it means we are putting our `ArrayMap` class within a folder called `Map61B`. Additionally, we import `List` and `ArrayList` from `java.util`.

**Exercise 5.2.1:** In our current implementation of `ArrayMap`, there is a bug. Can you figure out what it is?

**Answer:** In the `keys` method, the for loop should be iterating until `i == size`, not `keys.length`.

## ArrayMap and Autoboxing Puzzle



[Video link](#)

If we write a test as shown below:

```

@Test
public void test() {
 ArrayMap<Integer, Integer> am = new ArrayMap<Integer, Integer>();
 am.put(2, 5);
 int expected = 5;
 assertEquals(expected, am.get(2));
}

```

You will find that we get a compile-time error!

```

$ javac ArrayMapTest.java
ArrayMapTest.java:11: error: reference to assertEquals is ambiguous
 assertEquals(expected, am.get(2));
 ^
 both method assertEquals(long, long) in Assert and method assertEquals(Object, Obj
ect) in Assert match

```

We get this error because JUnit's `assertEquals` method is overloaded, eg. `assertEquals(int expected, int actual)` , `assertEquals(Object expected, Object actual)` , etc. Thus, Java is unsure which method to call for `assertEquals(expected, am.get(2))` , which requires one argument to be autoboxed/unboxed.

**Excercise 5.2.2** What would we need to do in order to call `assertEquals(long, long)` ? A.) Widen `expected` to a `long` B.) Autobox `expected` to a `Long` C.) Unbox `am.get(2)` D.) Widen the unboxed `am.get(2)` to `long`

**Answer** A, C, and D all work.

**Excercise 5.2.3** How would we make it work with `assertEquals(Object, Object)` ?

**Answer** Autobox expected to an Integer because Integers are objects .

**Excercise 5.2.4** How do we make the code compile with casting?

**Answer** Cast expected to Integer .

## Generic Methods

The goal for the next section is to create a class `MapHelper` which will have two methods:

- `get(Map61B, key)` : Returns the value corresponding to the given key in the map if it exists, otherwise null.
  - This is useful because `ArrayMap` currently has a bug where the get method throws an `ArrayIndexOutOfBoundsException` if we try to get a key that doesn't exist in the `ArrayMap` .
- `maxKey(Map61B)` : Returns the maximum of all keys in the given `ArrayMap` . Works only if keys can be compared.

### Implementing get

`get` is a static method that takes in a `Map61B` instance and a key and returns the value that corresponds to the key if it exists, otherwise returns null.

**Excercise 5.2.5** Try writing this method yourself!



#### Generic Methods



Can create a method that operates on generic types by defining type parameters *before* the return type of the method:  
Formal type parameter definitions.

```
public static <X, Zerp> Zerp get(ArrayMap<X, Zerp> am, X key) {
 if (am.containsKey(key)) {
 return am.get(key);
 }
 return null;
}
```

In almost all circumstances, using a generic method requires no special syntax:

```
ArrayMap<Integer, String> ismap =
 new ArrayMap<Integer, String>();
System.out.println(MapHelper.get(ismap, 5));
```

It's that easy.

[Video link](#)

As you see in the video, we could write a very limited method by declare the parameters as String and Integer like so:

```
public static Integer get(Map61B<String, Integer> map, String key) {
 ...
}
```

We are restricting this method to only take in `Map61B<String, Integer>`, which is not what we want! We want it to take any kind of `Map61B`, no matter what the actual types for the generics are. However, the following method header produces a compilation error:

```
public static V get(Map61B<K, V> map, String key) {
 ...
}
```

This is because with generics defined in class headers, Java waits for the user to instantiate an object of the class in order to know what actual types each generic will be. However, here we'd like a generic specific to this method. Moreover, we do not care what actual types `K` and `V` take on in our `Map61B` argument -- the important part is that whatever `V` is, an object of type `V` is returned.

Thus we see the need for generic methods. To declare a method as generic, the formal type parameters must be specified before the return type:

```
public static <K,V> V get(Map61B<K,V> map, K key) {
 if map.containsKey(key) {
 return map.get(key);
 }
 return null;
}
```

Here's an example of how to call it:

```
ArrayMap<Integer, String> isMap = new ArrayMap<Integer, String>();
System.out.println(mapHelper.get(isMap, 5));
```

You don't need any explicit declaration of what type you are inserting. Java can infer that `isMap` is an `ArrayMap` from `Integers` to `Strings`.

## Implementing maxKey

**Exercise 5.2.6** Try writing this method yourself!

Here's something that looks OK, but isn't quite correct:

```
public static <K, V> K maxKey(Map61B<K, V> map) {
 List<K> keylist = map.keys();
 K largest = map.get(0);
 for (K k: keylist) {
 if (k > largest) {
 largest = k;
 }
 }
 return largest;
}
```

**Exercise 5.2.7** Can you spot what's wrong with this method?

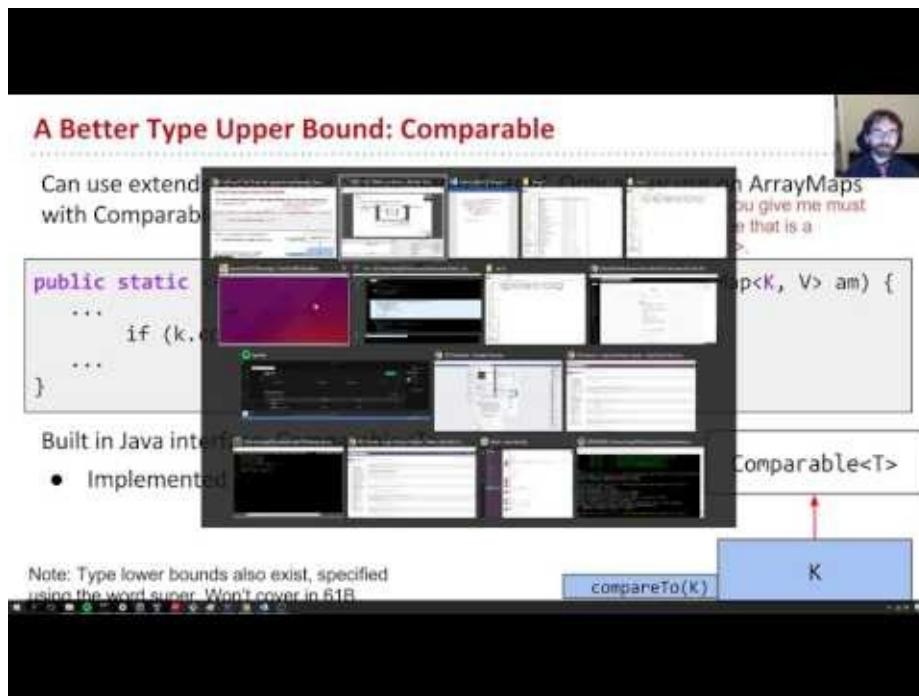
**Answer:** The `>` operator can't be used to compare `K` objects. This only works on primitives and `map` may not hold primitives

We will rewrite this method as such:

```
public static <K, V> K maxKey(Map61B<K, V> map) {
 List<K> keylist = map.keys();
 K largest = map.get(0);
 for (K k: keylist) {
 if (k.compareTo(largest)) {
 largest = k;
 }
 }
 return largest;
}
```

**Exercise 5.2.8** This is also wrong, why?

**Answer** Not all objects have a `compareTo` method!



[Video link](#)

We will introduce a little more syntax for generic methods in the header of the function.

```
public static <K extends Comparable<K>, V> K maxKey(Map<K, V> map) { ... }
```

The `K extends Comparable<K>` means keys must implement the comparable interface and can be compared to other K's. We need to include the `<K>` after `Comparable` because `Comparable` itself is a generic interface! Therefore, we must specify what kind of comparable we want. In this case, we want to compare K's with K's.

## Type upper bounds

You might be wondering, why does it "extend" comparable and not "implement"? Comparable is an interface after all.

Well, it turns out, "extends" in this context has a different meaning than in the polymorphism context.

When we say that the Dog class extends the Animal class, we are saying that Dogs can do anything that animals can do and more! We are **giving** Dog the abilities of an animal. When we say that K extends Comparable, we are simply stating a fact. We aren't **giving** K the abilities of a Comparable, we are just saying that K **must be** Comparable. This different use of `extends` is called type upper bounding. Confusing? That's okay, it *is* confusing. Just remember, in the context of inheritance, the `extends` keyword is active in giving the subclass the abilities of the superclass. You can think of it as a fairy Godmother: she sees

your needs and helps you out with some of her fairy magic. On the other hand, in the context of generics, `| extends` simply states a fact: You must be a subclass of whatever you're extending. **When used with generics (like in generic method headers), `| extends` imposes a constraint rather than grants new abilities.** It's akin to a fortune teller, who just tells you something without doing much about it.

## Summary

We've seen four new features of Java that make generics more powerful:

- Autoboxing and auto-unboxing of primitive wrapper types.
- Promotion/widening between primitive types.
- Specification of generic types for methods (before return type).
- Type upper bounds in generic methods (e.g. `K extends Comparable<K>` ).



## Throwing Exceptions

**Exceptions**

Basic idea:

- When something goes really wrong, break the normal flow of control.
- So far, we've only seen implicit exceptions, like the one below.

```
public static void main(String[] args) {
 ArrayMap<String, Integer> am = new ArrayMap<String, Integer>();
 am.put("hello", 5);
 System.out.println(am.get("yolp"));
}
```

```
$ java ExceptionDemo
Exception in thread "main"
java.lang.ArrayIndexOutOfBoundsException: -1
 at ArrayMap.get(ArrayMap.java:38)
 at ExceptionDemo.main(ExceptionDemo.java:6)
```

[Video link](#)

When something goes really wrong in a program, we want to break the normal flow of control. It may not make sense to continue on, or it may not be possible at all. In these cases, the program throws an exception.

Let's look at what might be a familiar case: an `IndexOutOfBoundsException`.

The code below inserts the value 5 into an `ArrayMap` under the key "hello", then tries to print out the value when getting "yolp."

```
public static void main (String[] args) {
 ArrayMap<String, Integer> am = new ArrayMap<String, Integer>();
 am.put("hello", 5);
 System.out.println(am.get("yolp"));
}
```

What happens when we run this? The program attempts to access a key which doesn't exist, and crashes! This results in the following error message:

```
$ java ExceptionDemo
Exception in thread "main" java.lang.ArrayIndexOutOfBoundsException: -1
 at ArrayMap.get(ArrayMap.java:38)
 at ExceptionDemo.main(ExceptionDemo.java:6)
```

This is an *implicit exception*, an error thrown by Java itself. We can learn a little bit from this message: we see that the program crashed because of an `ArrayIndexOutOfBoundsException`; but it doesn't tell us very much besides that. You may have encountered similarly unhelpful error messages during your own programming endeavors. So how can we be more helpful to the user of our program?

We can throw our own exceptions, using the `throw` keyword. This lets us provide our own error messages which may be more informative to the user. We can also provide information to error-handling code within our program. This is an *explicit exception* because we purposefully threw it as the programmer.

In the case above, we might implement `get` with a check for a missing key, that throws a more informative exception:

```
public V get(K key) {
 int location = findKey(key);
 if(location < 0) {
 throw newIllegalArgumentException("Key " + key + " does not exist in map.");
 }
 return values[findKey(key)];
}
```

Now, instead of `java.lang.ArrayIndexOutOfBoundsException: -1`, we see:

```
$java ExceptionDemo
Exception in thread "main" java.lang.IllegalArgumentException: Key yolk does not exist
in map.
at ArrayMap.get(ArrayMap.java:40)
at ExceptionDemo.main(ExceptionDemo.java:6)
```

## Catching Exceptions

**RuntimeException API**

**Class RuntimeException**

Any Throwable can be thrown with throw keyword.

```
java.lang.Object --> Is a subclass of
 java.lang.Throwable --> Is a subclass of
 java.lang.Exception --> Is a subclass of
 java.lang.RuntimeException
```

Constructors	Constructor and Description
Modifier:	<code>RuntimeException()</code> Constructs a new runtime exception with null as its detail message.
	<code>RuntimeException(String message)</code> Constructs a new runtime exception with the specified detail message.

Exceptions are instances of classes like most everything else in Java.

### Video link

As we've seen, sometimes things go wrong while the program is running. Java handles these "exceptional events" by throwing an exception. In this section, we'll see what else we can do when such an exception is thrown.

Consider these error situations:

- You try to use 383,124 gigabytes of memory.
- You try to cast an Object as a Dog, but dynamic type is not Dog.
- You try to call a method using a reference variable that is equal to null.
- You try to access index -1 of an array.

So far, we've seen Java crash and print error messages with implicit exceptions:

```
Object o = "mulchor";
Planet x = (Planet) o;
```

resulting in:

```
Exception in thread "main" java.lang.ClassCastException:
java.lang.String cannot be cast to Planet
```

And above, we saw how to provide more informative errors by using explicit exceptions:

```
public static void main(String[] args) {
 System.out.println("ayyy lmao");
 throw new RuntimeException("For no reason.");
}
```

which produces the error:

```
$ java Alien
ayyy lmao
Exception in thread "main" java.lang.RuntimeException: For no reason.
at Alien.main(Alien.java:4)
```

In this example, note a familiar construction: `new RuntimeException("For no reason.")`. This looks a lot like instantiating a class -- because that's exactly what it is. A `RuntimeException` is just a Java Object, like any other.

## Class `RuntimeException`

```
java.lang.Object <--> Is a subclass of
 | |
 +-----> Is a subclass of
java.lang.Throwable <-->
 | |
 +-----> Is a subclass of
java.lang.Exception <-->
 | |
 +-----> Is a subclass of
 |
java.lang.RuntimeException <-->
```

Constructors	
Modifier	Constructor and Description
	<code>RuntimeException()</code> Constructs a new runtime exception with null as its detail message.
	<code>RuntimeException(String message)</code> Constructs a new runtime exception with the specified detail message.

So far, thrown exceptions cause code to crash. But we can ‘catch’ exceptions instead, preventing the program from crashing. The keywords `try` and `catch` break the normal flow of the program, protecting it from exceptions.

Consider the following example:

## 6.1 Throwing and catching

---

```
Dog d = new Dog("Lucy", "Retriever", 80);
d.becomeAngry();

try {
 d.receivePat();
} catch (Exception e) {
 System.out.println("Tried to pat: " + e);
}
System.out.println(d);
```

The output of this code might be:

```
$ java ExceptionDemo
Tried to pat: java.lang.RuntimeException: grrr... snarl snarl
Lucy is a displeased Retriever weighing 80.0 standard lb units.
```

Here we see that when we try and pat the dog when the dog is angry, it throws a RuntimeException, with the helpful error message "grrr...snarl snarl." But, it does continue on, and print out the state of the dog in the final line! This is because we caught the exception.

This might not seem particularly useful yet. But we can also use a catch statement to take corrective action.

```
Dog d = new Dog("Lucy", "Retriever", 80);
d.becomeAngry();

try {
 d.receivePat();
} catch (Exception e) {
 System.out.println(
 "Tried to pat: " + e);
 d.eatTreat("banana");
}
d.receivePat();
System.out.println(d);
```

In this version of our code, we soothe the dog with a treat. Now when we try and pat it again, the method executes without failing.

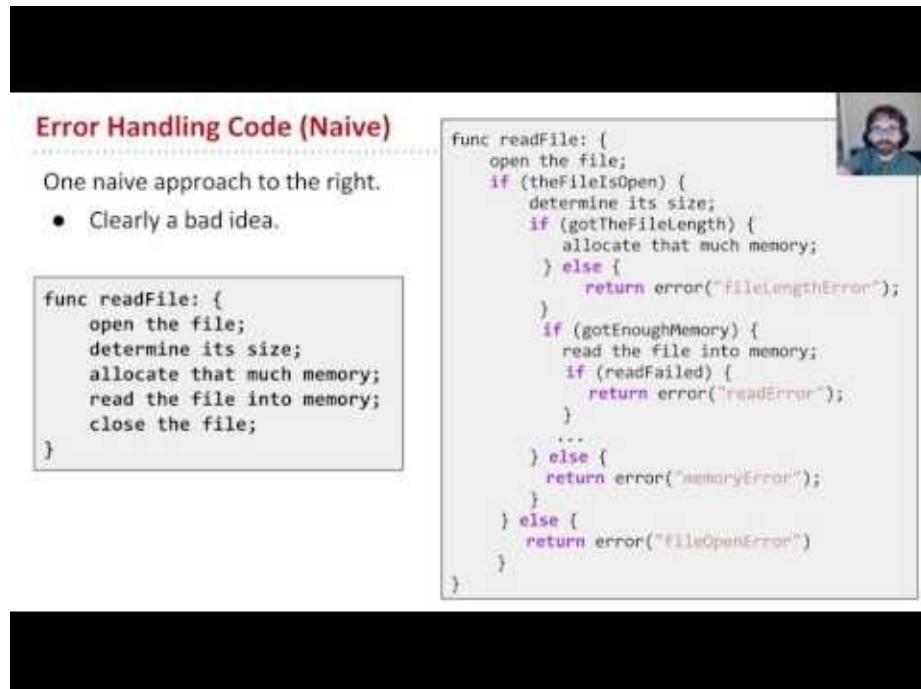
```
$ java ExceptionDemo
Tried to pat: java.lang.RuntimeException: grrr... snarl snarl
Lucy munches the banana

Lucy enjoys the pat.

Lucy is a happy Retriever weighing 80.0 standard lb units.
```

In the real world, this corrective action might be extending an antenna on a robot when an exception is thrown by an operation expecting a ready antenna. Or perhaps we simply want to write the error to a log file for later analysis.

## The Philosophy Of Exceptions



**Error Handling Code (Naive)**

One naive approach to the right.

- Clearly a bad idea.

```
func readFile: {
 open the file;
 if (theFileIsOpen) {
 determine its size;
 if (gotTheFileLength) {
 allocate that much memory;
 } else {
 return error("fileLengthError");
 }
 if (gotEnoughMemory) {
 read the file into memory;
 if (readFailed) {
 return error("readError");
 }
 ...
 } else {
 return error("memoryError");
 }
 } else {
 return error("fileOpenError");
 }
}
```

[Video link](#)

Exceptions aren't the only way to do error handling. But they do have some advantages. Most importantly, they keep error handling conceptually separate from the rest of the program.

Let's consider some psuedocode for a program that reads from a file:

```
func readFile: {
 open the file;
 determine its size;
 allocate that much memory;
 read the file into memory;
 close the file;
}
```

A lot of things might go wrong here: maybe the file doesn't exist, maybe there isn't enough memory, or the reading fails.

Without exceptions, we might handle the errors like this:

```
func readFile: {
 open the file;
 if (theFileIsOpen) {
 determine its size;
 if (gotTheFileLength) {
 allocate that much memory;
 } else {
 return error("fileLengthError");
 }
 if (gotEnoughMemory) {
 read the file into memory;
 if (readFailed) {
 return error("readError");
 }
 ...
 } else {
 return error("memoryError");
 }
 } else {
 return error("fileOpenError")
 }
}
```

But this super messy! And deeply frustrating to read.

With exceptions, we might rewrite this as:

```
func readFile: {
 try {
 open the file;
 determine its size;
 allocate that much memory;
 read the file into memory;
 close the file;
 } catch (fileOpenFailed) {
 doSomething;
 } catch (sizeDeterminationFailed) {
 doSomething;
 } catch (memoryAllocationFailed) {
 doSomething;
 } catch (readFailed) {
 doSomething;
 } catch (fileCloseFailed) {
 doSomething;
 }
}
```

Here, we first do all the things associated with reading our file, and wrap them in a try statement. Then, if an error happens anywhere in that sequence of operations, it will get caught by the appropriate catch statement. We can provide distinct behaviors for each type of exception.

The key benefit of the exceptions version, in contrast to the naive version above, is that the code flows in a clean narrative. First, try to do the desired operations. Then, catch any errors. Good code feels like a story; it has a certain beauty to its construction. That clarity makes it easier to both write and maintain over time.

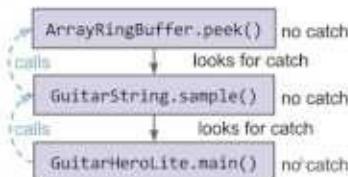
## Uncaught Exceptions



### Exceptions and the Call Stack



When an exception is thrown, it descends the call stack.



```

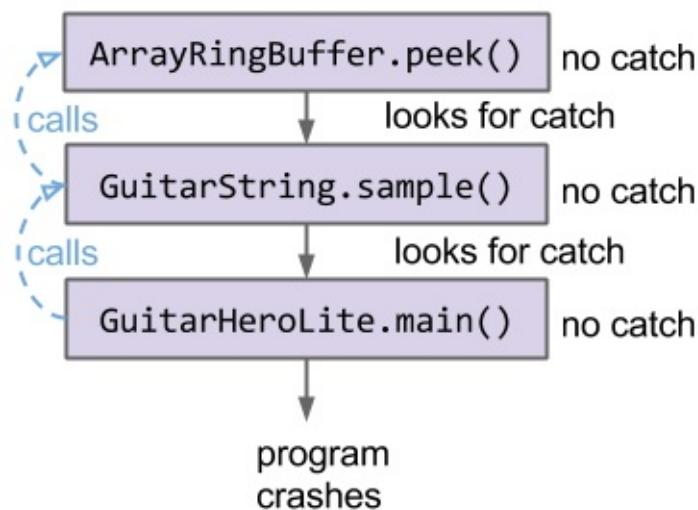
java.lang.RuntimeException in thread "main":
 at ArrayRingBuffer.peek:63
 at GuitarString.sample:48
 at GuitarHeroLite.java:110

```



[Video link](#)

When an exception is thrown, it descends the call stack.



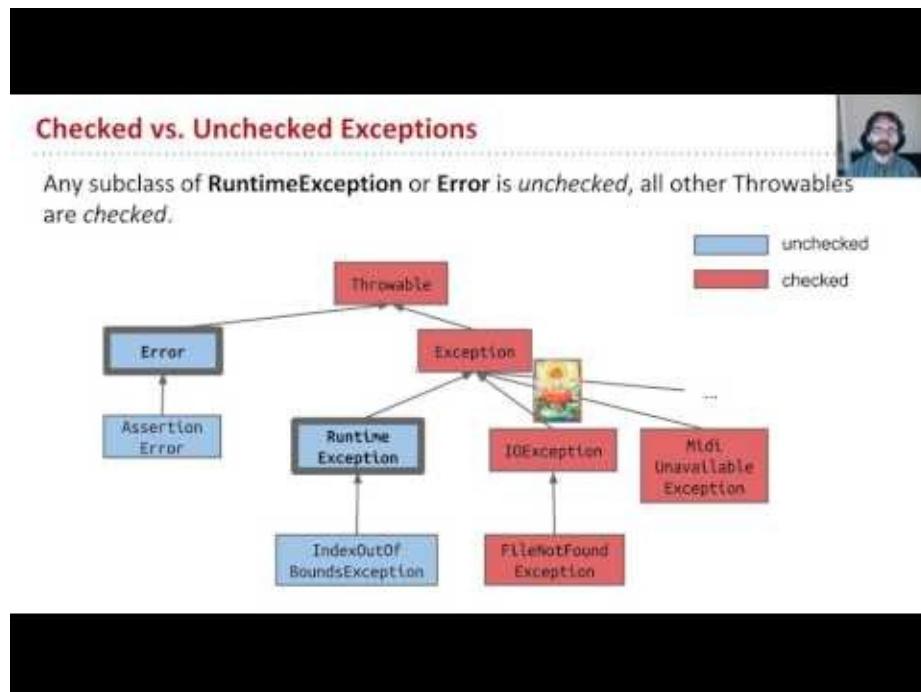
If the `peek()` method does not explicitly catch the exception, the exception will propagate to the calling function, `sample()`. We can think of this as popping the current method off the stack, and moving to the next method below it. If `sample()` also fails to catch the exception, it moves to `main()`.

If the exception reaches the bottom of the stack without being caught, the program crashes and Java provides a message for the user, printing out the *stack trace*. Ideally the user is a programmer with the power to do something about it.

```
java.lang.RuntimeException in thread "main":
at ArrayRingBuffer.peek:63
at GuitarString.sample:48
at GuitarHeroLite.java:110
```

We can see by looking at the stack trace where the error occurred: on line 63 of `ArrayRingBuffer.peek()`, after being called by line 48 of `GuitarString.sample()`, after being called by the main method of `GuitarHeroLite.java` on line 110. But this isn't super helpful unless the user also happens to be a programmer with the power to do something about the error.

## Checked vs Unchecked Exceptions



[Video link](#)

The exceptions we've seen above have all occurred at runtime. Occasionally, you'll find that your code won't even compile, for the mysterious reason that an exception "must be caught or declared to be thrown".

What's going on in that case? The basic idea is that some exceptions are considered so disgusting by the compiler that you **MUST** handle them somehow.

We call these "checked" exceptions. (You might think of that as shorthand for "must be checked" exceptions.)

Let's consider this example:

```
public static void main(String[] args) {
 Eagle.gulgate();
}
```

It looks reasonable enough. But when we attempt to compile, we receive this error:

```
$ javac What.java
What.java:2: error: unreported exception IOException; must be caught or declared to be
thrown
Eagle.gulgate();
^
```

We can't compile, because of an "unreported IOException." Let's look a little deeper into the Eagle class:

```
public class Eagle {
 public static void gulgate() {
 if (today == "Thursday") {
 throw new IOException("hi"); }
 }
}
```

On Thursdays, the `gulgate()` method is programmed to throw an IOException. If we try and compile Eagle.java, we receive a similar error to the one we saw when compiling the calling class above:

```
$ javac Eagle
Eagle.java:4: error: unreported exception IOException; must be caught or declared to b
e thrown
 throw new IOException("hi"); }
^
```

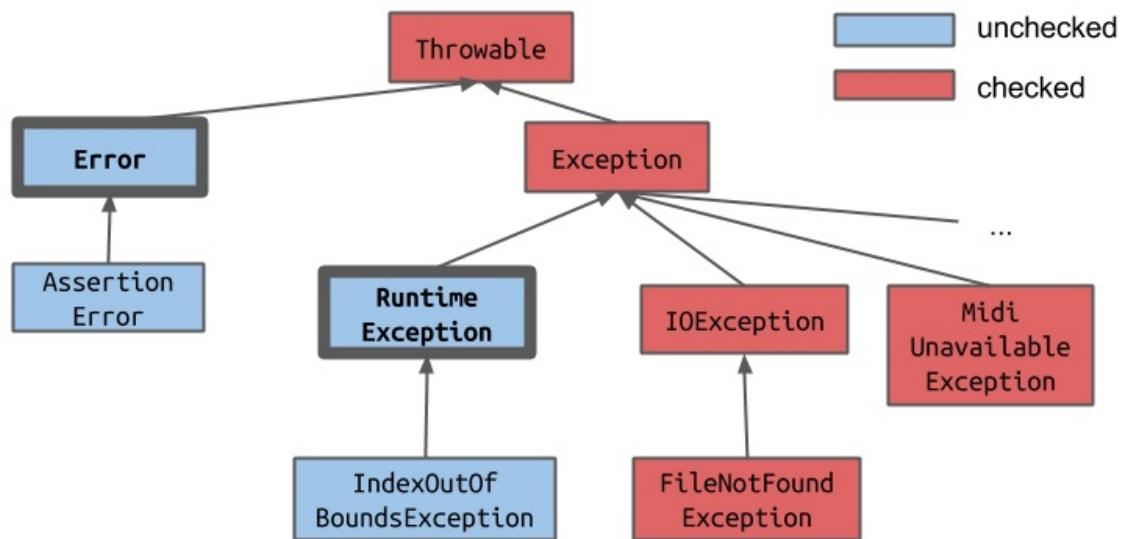
It's clear that Java isn't happy about this IOException. This is because IOExceptions are "checked" exceptions and must be handled accordingly. We will go over how this handling occurs a bit later in the chapter. But what if we threw a RuntimeException instead, like we did in previous sections?

```
public class UncheckedExceptionDemo {
 public static void main(String[] args) {
 if (today == "Thursday") {
 throw new RuntimeException("as a joke");
 }
 }
}
```

RuntimeExceptions are considered "unchecked" exceptions, and do not have the same requirements as the checked exceptions. The code above will compile just fine -- though it will crash at runtime on Thursdays:

```
$ javac UncheckedExceptionDemo.java
$ java UncheckedExceptionDemo
Exception in thread "main" java.lang.RuntimeException: as a joke.
at UncheckedExceptionDemo.main(UncheckedExceptionDemo.java:3)
```

How do we know which types of exceptions are checked, and which are unchecked?



Errors and Runtime Exceptions, and all their children, are unchecked. These are errors that cannot be known until runtime. They also tend to be ones that can't be recovered from -- what can you do to fix it if the code tries to get the -1 element from an array? Not much.

Everything else is a checked exception. Most of these have productive fixes. For instance, if we run into a `FileNotFoundException`, perhaps we can ask the user to re-specify the file they want -- they might have mistyped it.

Since Java is on your side, and wants to do its best to make sure that every program runs without crashing, it will not let a program with a possible fixable error compile unless it is indeed handled in some way.

There are two ways to handle a checked error:

- 1) Catch
- 2) Specify

Using a **catch** block is what we have seen above. In our `gulgate()` method, it might look like this:

```

public static void gulgate() {
 try {
 if (today == "Thursday") {
 throw new IOException("hi");
 }
 } catch (Exception e) {
 System.out.println("psych!");
 }
}

```

If we don't want to handle the exception in the `gulgate()` method, we can instead defer the responsibility to somewhere else. We mark, or **specify** the method as dangerous by modifying the method definition as follows:

```
public static void gulgate() throws IOException {
 ... throw new IOException("hi");
}
```

But specifying the exception does not yet handle it. When we call `gulgate()` from somewhere else, that new method now becomes dangerous as well!

Since `gulgate()` might throw an uncaught exception, now `main()` can also throw that exception, and the following code won't compile:

```
public static void main(String[] args) {
 Eagle.gulgate();
}
```

We can solve this in one of two ways: catch, or specify in the calling method.

Catch:

```
public static void main(String[] args) {
 try {
 gulgate();
 } catch(IOException e) {
 System.out.println("Averted!");
 }
}
```

Specify:

```
public static void main(String[] args) throws IOException {
 gulgate();
}
```

**Catch** the error when you can handle the problem there. Keep it from escaping!

**Specify** the error when someone else should handle the error. Make sure the caller knows the method is dangerous!

## Iteration

**How Iterators Work**

An alternate, uglier way to iterate through a List is to use the iterator() method.

friends: 5 23 42

```
$ java IteratorDemo.java
```

```
Iterator<Integer> seer
 = friends.iterator();
while (seer.hasNext()) {
 System.out.println(seer.next());
}
```

[Video link](#)

We saw that Java allows us to iterate through Lists using a convenient shorthand syntax sometimes called the “foreach” or “enhanced for” loop.

For example,

```
List<Integer> friends =
new ArrayList<Integer>();
friends.add(5);
friends.add(23);
friends.add(42);
for (int x : friends) {
 System.out.println(x);
}
```

Let's strip away the magic so we can build our own classes that support this.

The key here is an object called an *iterator*.

For our example, in List.java we might define an `iterator()` method that returns an iterator object.

```
public Iterator<E> iterator();
```

Now, we can use that object to loop through all the entries in our list:

```
List<Integer> friends = new ArrayList<Integer>();
...
Iterator<Integer> seer = friends.iterator();

while (seer.hasNext()) {
 System.out.println(seer.next());
}
```

This code behaves identically to the foreach loop version above.

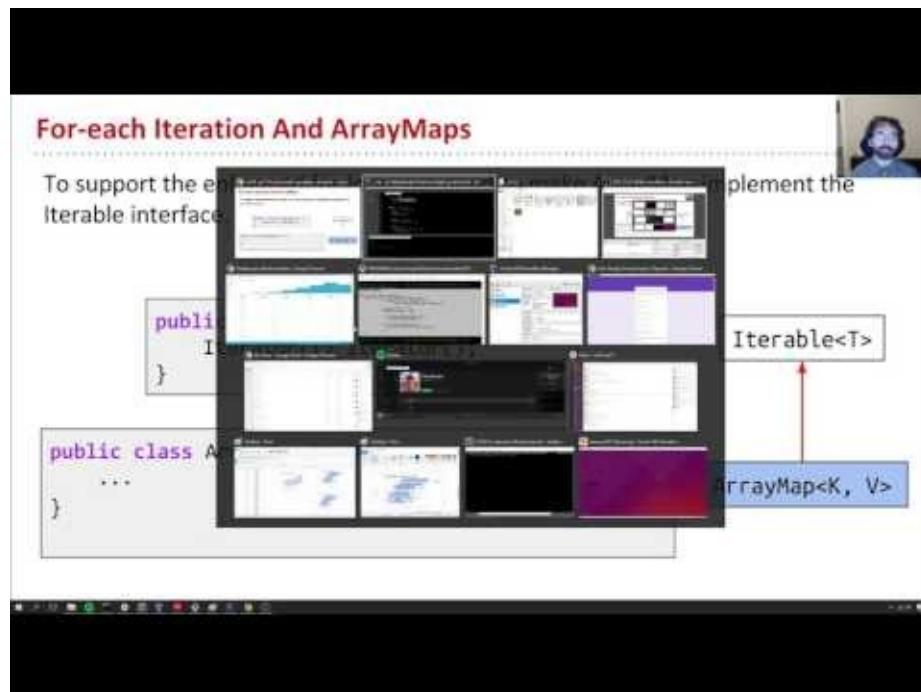
There are three key methods in our iterator approach:

First, we get a new iterator object with `Iterator<Integer> seer = friends.iterator();`

Next, we loop through the list with our while loop. We check that there are still items left with `seer.hasNext()`, which will return true if there are unseen items remaining, and false if all items have been processed.

Last, `seer.next()` does two things at once. It returns the next element of the list, and here we print it out. It also advances the iterator by one item. In this way, the iterator will only inspect each item once.

## Implementing Iterators



[Video link](#)

In this section, we are going to talk about how to build a class to support iteration.

Let's start by thinking about what the compiler need to know in order to successfully compile the following iterator example:

```
List<Integer> friends = new ArrayList<Integer>();
Iterator<Integer> seer = friends.iterator();

while(seer.hasNext()) {
 System.out.println(seer.next());
}
```

We can look at the static types of each object that calls a relevant method. `friends` is a List, on which `iterator()` is called, so we must ask:

- Does the List interface have an iterator() method?

`seer` is an Iterator, on which `hasNext()` and `next()` are called, so we must ask:

- Does the Iterator interface have next/hasNext() methods?

So how do we implement these requirements?

The List interface extends the Iterable interface, inheriting the abstract iterator() method. (Actually, List extends Collection which extends Iterable, but it's easier to codethink of this way to start.)

```
public interface Iterable<T> {
 Iterator<T> iterator();
}
```

```
public interface List<T> extends Iterable<T>{
 ...
}
```

Next, the compiler checks that Iterators have `hasNext()` and `next()`. The Iterator interface specifies these abstract methods explicitly:

```
package java.util;
public interface Iterator<T> {
 boolean hasNext();
 T next();
}
```

Specific classes will implement their own iteration behaviors for the interface methods. Let's look at an example. (Note: if you want to build this up from the start, follow along with the live coding in the video.)

We are going to add iteration through keys to our ArrayMap class. First, we write a new class called KeyIterator, nested inside of ArrayMap:

```
public class KeyIterator {
 private int ptr;
 public KeyIterator() {
 ptr = 0;
 }

 public boolean hasNext() {
 return (ptr != size);
 }

 public K next() {
 K returnItem = keys[ptr];
 ptr = ptr + 1;
 return returnItem;
 }
}
```

This KeyIterator implements a `hasNext()` method, and a `next()` method, using a `ptr` variable to keep track of its position in the array of keys. For a different data structure, we might implement these two methods differently.

**Thought Excercise:** How would you design `hasNext()` and `next()` for a linked list?

Now that we have the appropriate methods, we can use a KeyIterator to iterate through an ArrayMap:

```
ArrayMap<String, Integer> am = new ArrayMap<String, Integer>();
am.put("hello", 5);
am.put("syrups", 10);
ArrayMap.KeyIterator ami = am.new KeyIterator();

while (ami.hasNext()) {
 System.out.println(ami.next());
}
```

There's an interesting line in the code above: `am.new KeyIterator();`. This construction allows us to instantiate a non-static nested class, meaning a class that needs to be associated with a particular instance of the enclosing class. It wouldn't make sense to have a KeyIterator not associated with a particular ArrayMap -- what would it iterate through? So, we must use dot notation with a specific ArrayMap instance to create a new KeyIterator associated with that instance.

Now we have a KeyIterator, and it can loop through an ArrayMap. We still want to be able to support the enhanced for loop, though, to make our calls cleaner. So, we need to make ArrayMap implement the Iterable interface. The essential method of the Iterable interface is `iterator()`, which returns an Iterator object for that class:

```
public class ArrayMap<K, V> implements Iterable<K>
 @Override
 public Iterator<T> iterator() {
 return new KeyIterator();
 }
}
```

We override that `iterator()` method to return the KeyIterator that we just wrote.

There's one more step before the code will compile: we have to tell Java that KeyIterator is an Iterator. To make that happen, KeyIterator must implement Iterator. This way, we can return a KeyIterator in our `iterator()` method above, and successfully implement the Iterator methods:

```
public class KeyIterator implements Iterator<K> {
 private int ptr;
 public KeyIterator() { ptr = 0; }
 public boolean hasNext() { return (ptr != size); }
 public K next() { ... }
}
```

Now we can use our enhanced for loop construction with an ArrayMap:

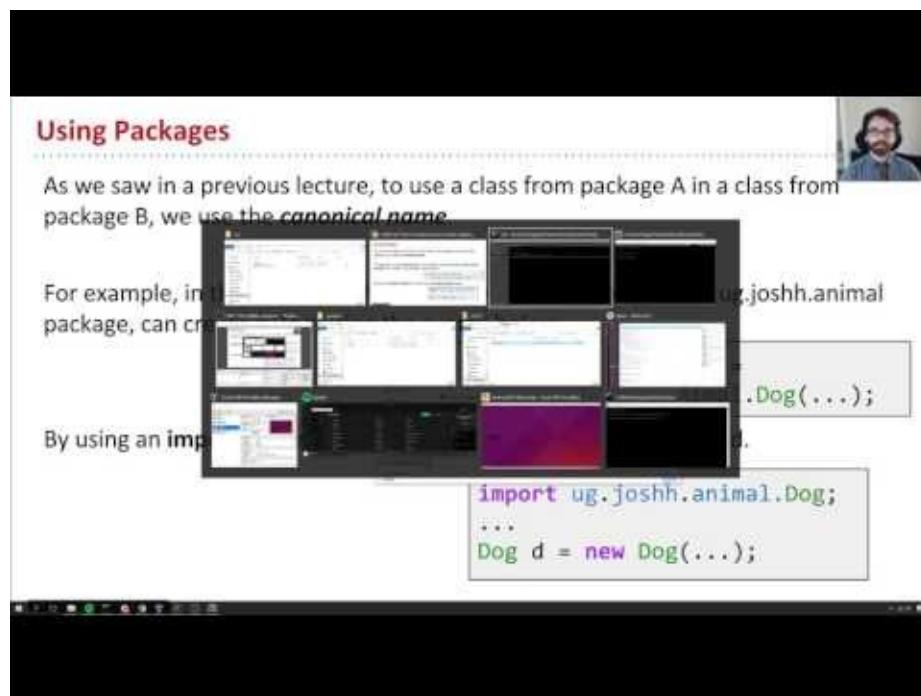
```
ArrayMap<String, Integer> am = new ArrayMap<String, Integer>();
for (String s : am) {
 System.out.println(s);
}
```

Here we've seen **Iterable**, the interface that makes a class able to be iterated on, and requires the method `iterator()`, which returns an Iterator object. And we've seen **Iterator**, the interface that defines the object with methods to actually do that iteration. You can think of an Iterator as a machine that you put onto an iterable that facilitates the iteration. Any iterable is the object on which the iterator is performing.

With these two components, you can make fancy for loops for your classes!



## Packages and JAR files



[Video link](#)

It is very possible that with all the code in this world, you would create classes that share names with those from a different project. How can you then organize these classes, such that there is less ambiguity when you're trying to access or use them? How will your program know that you mean to use your `Dog.class`, versus Josh Hug's `Dog.class`?

Herein enters the **package** — a namespace that organizes classes and interfaces. In general, when creating packages you should follow the following naming convention: package name starts with the website address, backwards.

For example, if Josh Hug were trying to distribute his `Animal` package, which contains various different types of animal classes, he would name his package as following:

```
ug.joshh.animal; // note: his website is joshh.ug
```

However, in CS61B you do not have to follow this convention, as your code isn't intended for distribution.

## Using Packages

If you're accessing the class from within the same package, you can just use its simple name:

```
Dog d = new Dog(...);
```

If you're accessing the classes from outside the package, then use its entire canonical name:

```
ug.joshh.animal.Dog d = new ug.joshh.animal.Dog(...);
```

To make things easier, you can import the package, and use the simple name instead!

```
import ug.joshh.animal.Dog;
...
Dog d = new Dog(...);
```

## Creating a Package

Creating a package takes the following two steps:

- 1.) Put the package name at the top of every file in this package

```
package ug.joshh.animal;

public class Dog {
 private String name;
 private String breed;
 ...
}
```

- 2.) Store the file in a folder that has the appropriate folder name. The folder should have a name that matches your package:

i.e. `ug.joshh.animal` package is in `ug/joshh/animal` folder

### **Creating a Package, in IntelliJ**

- 1.) File → New Package

- 1.) Choose package name (i.e. “ug.joshh.animal”)

### **Adding (new) Java Files to a Package, in IntelliJ**

- 1.) Right-click package name

- 2.) Select New → Java Class

3.) Name your class, and IntelliJ will automatically put it in the correct folder + add the “package ug.joshh.animal” declaration for you.

### **Adding (old) Java Files to a Package, in IntelliJ**

1.) Add “package [packagename]” to the top of the file.

2.) Move the .java file into the corresponding folder.

## **Default packages**

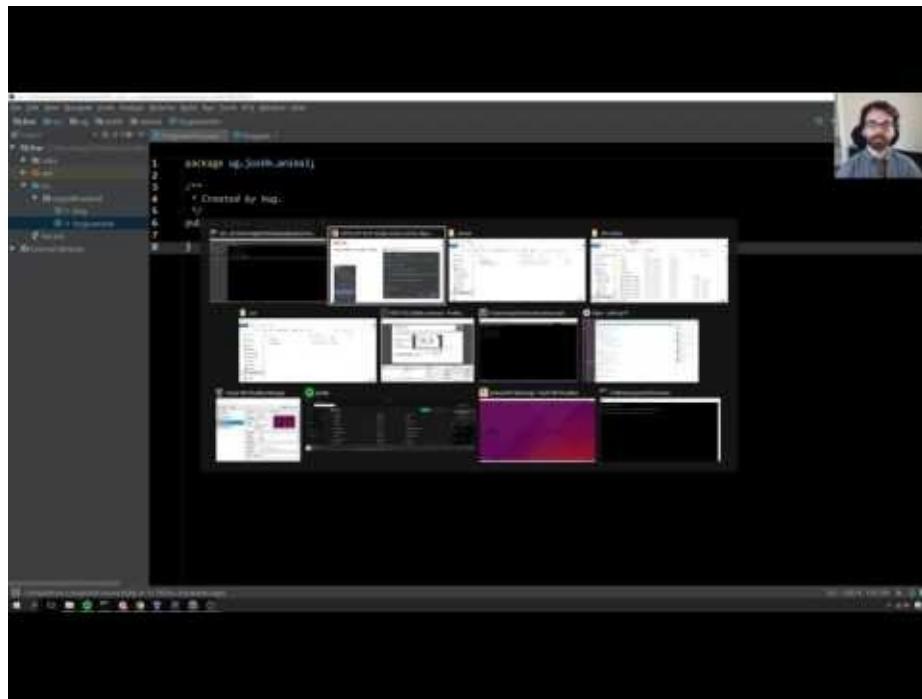
Any Java class without an explicit package name at the top of the file is automatically considered to be part of the “default” package. However, when writing real programs, you should avoid leaving your files in the default package (unless it’s a very small example program). This is because code from the default package cannot be imported, and it is possible to accidentally create classes with the same name under the default package.

For example, if I were to create a “DogLauncher.java” class in the default package, I would be unable to access this DogLauncher class anywhere else outside of the default package.

```
DogLauncher.launch(); // won't work
default.DogLauncher.launch(); // doesn't exist
```

Therefore, your Java files should generally start with an explicit package declaration.

## **JAR Files**



[Video link](#)

Oftentimes, programs will contain multiple .class files. If you wanted to share this program, rather than sharing all the .class files in special directories, you can “zip” all the files together by creating a JAR file. This single .jar file will contain all your .class files, along with some other additional information.

It is important to note that JAR files are just like zip files. It is entirely possible to unzip and transform the files back into .java files. JAR files do not keep your code safe, and thus you should not share your .jar files of your projects with other students.

### **Creating a JAR File (IntelliJ)**

- 1.) Go to File → Project Structure → Artifacts → JAR → “From modules with dependencies”
- 2.) Click OK a couple of times
- 3.) Click Build → Build Artifacts (this will create a JAR file in a folder called “Artifacts”)
- 4.) Distribute this JAR file to other Java programmers, who can now import it into IntelliJ (or otherwise)

### **Build Systems**

Rather than importing a list of libraries or whatnot each time we wanted to create a project, we can simply put the files into the appropriate place, and use “Build Systems” to automate the process of setting up your project. The advantages of Build Systems are especially seen in bigger teams and projects, where it’s largely beneficial to automate the process of setting

up the project structure. Though the advantages of Build Systems are rather minimal in 61B, we did use Maven in Project 3 (BearMaps, Spring 2017), which is one of many popular build systems (including Ant and Gradle).

# Access Control

**The Protected Keyword**

**Protected** modifier allows package-buddies and subclasses to use a class member (i.e. field).

- Outsiders can't see it.

Modifier: public, protected, private

package syntax:

```
public class ArrayMap ... {
 protected int size; ...
}
```

```
public class MyonicArrayMap extends ArrayMap {
 public MyonicArrayMap(int s) {
 size = s; ...
 }
}
```

[Video link](#)

We now run into the question of how public and private members behave in packages and subclasses. Think to yourself right now: when inheriting from a parent class, can we access the private members in that parent class? Or, can two classes in the same package access the other's private members?

If you don't know the answers right away, you can read on to find out!

**Private** Only code from the given class can access **private** members. It is truly *private* from everything else, as subclasses, packages, and other external classes cannot access private members. *TL;DR: only the class needs this piece of code*

**Package Private** This is the default access given to Java members if there is no explicit modifier written. Package private entails that classes that belong in the same package can access, but not subclasses! Why is this useful? Usually, packages are handled and modified by the same (group of) people. It is also common for people to extend classes that they didn't initially write. The original owners of the class that's being extended may not want certain features or members to be tampered with, if people choose to extend it — hence, package-private allows those who are familiar with the inner workings of the program to access and modify certain members, whereas it blocks those who are subclassing from doing the same. *TL;DR: only classes that live in the same package can access*

**Protected** Protected members are protected from the “outside” world, so classes within the same package and subclasses can access these members, but the rest of the world (e.g. classes external to the package or non-subclasses) cannot! *TL;DR: subtypes might need it, but subtype clients will not*

**Public** This keyword opens up the access to everyone! This is generally what clients of the package can rely on to use, and once deployed, the public members’ signatures should not change. It’s like a promise and contract to people using this public code that it will always be accessible to them. Usually if developers want to “get rid of” something that’s public, rather than removing it, they would call it “deprecated” instead.

*TL;DR: open and promised to the world*

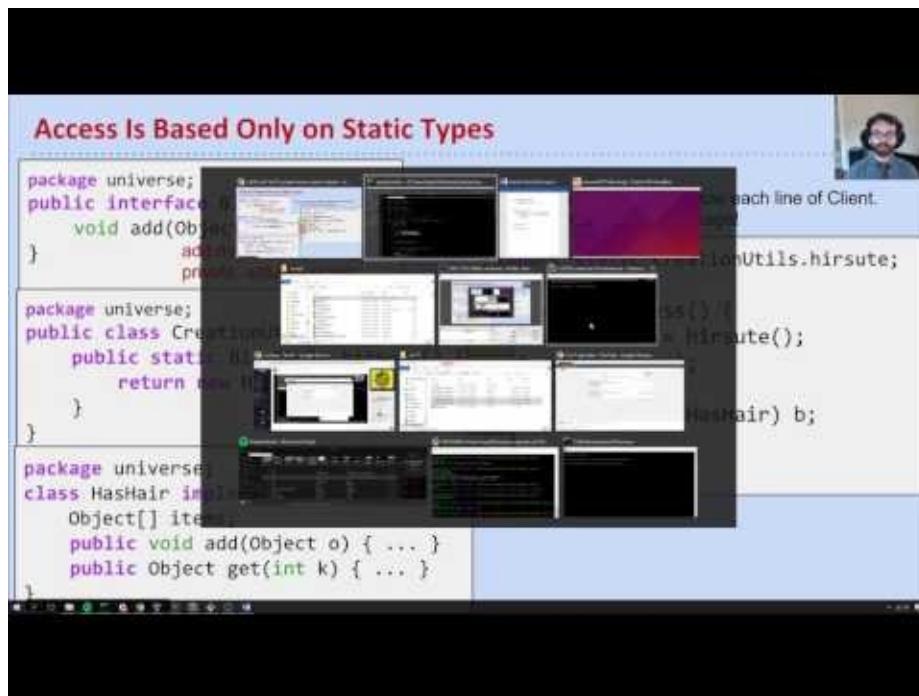
**Exercise 7.1.1** See if you can draw the access table yourself, from memory.

Have the following be the column titles: Modifier, Class, Package, Subclass, World, with the following as the Rows: public, protected, package-private, private.

Indicate whether or not each row/access type has access to that particular column’s “type”.

Modifier	Class	Package	Subclass	World
public	Y	Y	Y	Y
protected	Y	Y	Y	N
	Y	Y	N	N
private	Y	N	N	N

## Access Control Subtleties



[Video link](#)

**Default Package** Code that does not have a package declaration is automatically part of the default package. If these classes have members that don't have access modifiers (i.e. are package-private), then because everything is part of the same (unnamed) default package, these members are still accessible between these “default”-package classes.

**Access is Based Only on Static Types** It is important to note that for interfaces, the default access for its methods is actually public, and not package-private. Additionally, like this subtitle indicates, the access depends only on the static types.

### Exercise 7.1.2

Given the following code, which lines in the demoAccess method, if any, will error during compile time?

```

package universe;
public interface BlackHole {
 void add(Object x); // this method is public, not package-private!
}

package universe;
public class CreationUtils {
 public static BlackHole hirsute() {
 return new HasHair();
 }
}

package universe;
class HasHair implements BlackHole {
 Object[] items;
 public void add(Object o) { ... }
 public Object get(int k) { ... }
}

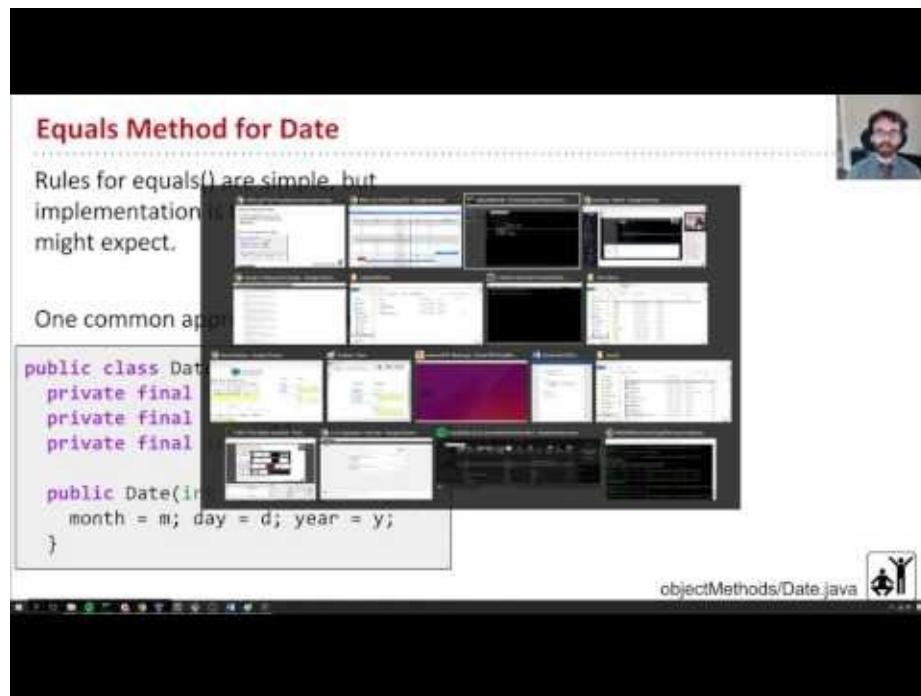
import static CreationUtils.hirsute;
class Client {
 void demoAccess() {
 BlackHole b = hirsute();
 b.add("horse");
 b.get(0);
 HasHair hb = (HasHair) b;
 }
}

```

## ANSWER

- `b.get(0);`: This line errors because `b` is of static type `BlackHole`, but the `BlackHole` interface does not define a `get` method! Even though you and I both know that `b` is dynamically a `HasHair`, and thus has the `get` method, the compiler bases its checks off the static type.
- `HasHair hb = (HasHair) b;`: This one is tricky, but notice that the `HasHair` class is not a public class - it's package-private. This means that `Client`, a class outside of the `universe` package, can't see that the `HasHair` class exists.

## Object Methods



[Video link](#)

**Objects Class** All classes are hyponyms of Object. This means that all classes will inherit the following methods:

- **String `toString()`**
- **boolean `equals(Object obj)`**
- `Class<?> getClass()`
- **int `hashCode()`**
- `protected Object clone()`
- `protected void finalize()`
- `void notify()`
- `void notifyAll()`
- `void wait()`
- `void wait(long timeout)`
- `void wait(long timeout, int nanos)`

Only the bolded methods will be discussed or used in CS61B, however!

**.`toString()`** If you want to provide a custom String representation of an object (similar to the idea of `_repr_` or `__str__` in Python), you can override this method with your own implementation.

**.`equals()` vs. `== ==`** will always check if two variables reference the same object (looks at the address bits in box). This is equivalent to checking if “object1 is object2”.

By default, `.equals()` will also have the same functionality as `==`, and checks for the address bits in the box. However, you have the ability to override the `.equals()` method for your own class to create a custom `.equals()` that behave more semantically.

An example would be with the following:

```
public static void main(String[] args) {
 int[] x = new int[]{0, 1, 2, 3, 4};
 int[] y = new int[]{0, 1, 2, 3, 4};
 System.out.println(x == y);
 System.out.println(x.equals(y));
}
```

The first print statement would be false, as `x` and `y` are pointing to two different places in memory. However, the second print statement would be true, as `Array.equals` checks for the **contents** of the given arrays, and not just the address bits in each variable's box.

**Rules for Equals in Java** When overriding a `.equals()` method, it may sometimes be trickier than it seems. A couple of rules to adhere to while implementing your `.equals()` method are as follows:

1.) equals must be an **equivalence relation**

- **reflexive**: `x.equals(x)` is true
- **symmetric**: `x.equals(y)` IFF `y.equals(x)`
- **transitive**: `x.equals(y)` and `y.equals(z)` implies `x.equals(z)`

2.) It must take an **Object argument**, in order to override the original `.equals()` method

3.) It must be **consistent**

- if `x.equals(y)`, then as long as `x` and `y` remain unchanged: `x` must *continue to equal* `y`

4.) It is never true for null

- `x.equals(null)` **must** be false



## Efficient Programming

"An engineer will do for a dime what any fool will do for a dollar" -- Paul Hilfinger

Efficiency comes in two flavors:

1.) Programming cost.

- How long does it take to develop your programs?
- How easy is it to read, modify, and maintain your code?

2.) Execution cost (starting next week).

- How much time does your program take to execute?
- How much memory does your program require?

Today, we will be focusing on how to reduce programming cost. Of course, want to keep programming costs low, both so we can write code faster and so we can have less frustrated people which will also help us write code faster (people don't code very fast when they are frustrated).

Some helpful Java features discussed in 61B:

- Packages.
  - Good: Organizing, making things package private
  - Bad: Specific
- Static type checking.
  - Good: Checks for errors early , reads more like a story
  - Bad: Not too flexible, (casting)
- Inheritance.
  - Good: Reuse of code
  - Bad: "Is a", the path of debugging gets annoying, can't instantiate, implement every method of an interface

We will explore some new ways in this chapter!

## Encapsulation

We will first define a few terms:

- **Module:** A set of methods that work together as a whole to perform some task or set of related tasks.
- **Encapsulated:** A module is said to be encapsulated if its implementation is completely

hidden, and it can be accessed only through a documented interface.

## API's

An API(Application Programming Interface) of an ADT is the list of constructors and methods and a short description of each.

API consists of syntactic and semantic specification.

- Compiler verifies that **syntax** is met.
  - AKA, everything specified in the API is present.
- Tests help verify that **semantics** are correct.
  - AKA everything actually works the way it should.
  - Semantic specification usually written out in English (possibly including usage examples). Mathematically precise formal specifications are somewhat possible but not widespread.

## ADT's

ADT's (Abstract Data Structures) are high-level types that are defined by their **behaviors**, not their implementations.

i.e.) Deque in Proj1 was an ADT that had certain behaviors (addFirst, addLast, etc.). But, the data structures we actually used to implement it was ArrayDeque and LinkedListDeque

Some ADT's are actually special cases of other ADT's. For example, Stacks and Queues are just lists that have even more specific behavior.

### Exercise 8.1.1

Write a Stack class using a Linked List as its underlying data structure. You only need to implement a single function: push(Item x). Make sure to make the class generic with "Item" being the generic type!

You may have written it a few different ways. Let's look at three popular solutions:

```
public class ExtensionStack<Item> extends LinkedList<Item> {
 public void push(Item x) {
 add(x);
 }
}
```

This solution uses *extension*. It simply borrows the methods from `LinkedList<Item>` and uses them as its own.

```
public class DelegationStack<Item> {
 private LinkedList<Item> L = new LinkedList<Item>();
 public void push(Item x) {
 L.add(x);
 }
}
```

This approach uses *Delegation*. It creates a Linked List object and calls its methods to accomplish its goal.

```
public class StackAdapter<Item> {
 private List L;
 public StackAdapter(List<Item> worker) {
 L = worker;
 }

 public void push(Item x) {
 L.add(x);
 }
}
```

This approach is similar to the previous one, except it can use any class that implements the `List` interface (Linked List, ArrayList, etc).

**Warning:** be mindful of the difference between "is-a" and "has-a" relationships.

- A cat has-a claw
- A cat is-a feline

Earlier in the section define that delegation is accomplished by passing in a class while extension is defined as inheriting (just because it may be hard to notice at first glance).

**Delegation vs Extension:** Right now it may seem that Delegation and Extension are pretty much interchangeable; however, there are some important differences that must be remembered when using them.

Extension tends to be used when you know what is going on in the parent class. In other words, you know how the methods are implemented. Additionally, with extension, you are basically saying that the class you are extending from acts similarly to the one that is doing the extending. On the other hand, Delegation is when you do not want to consider your current class to be a version of the class that you are pulling the method from.

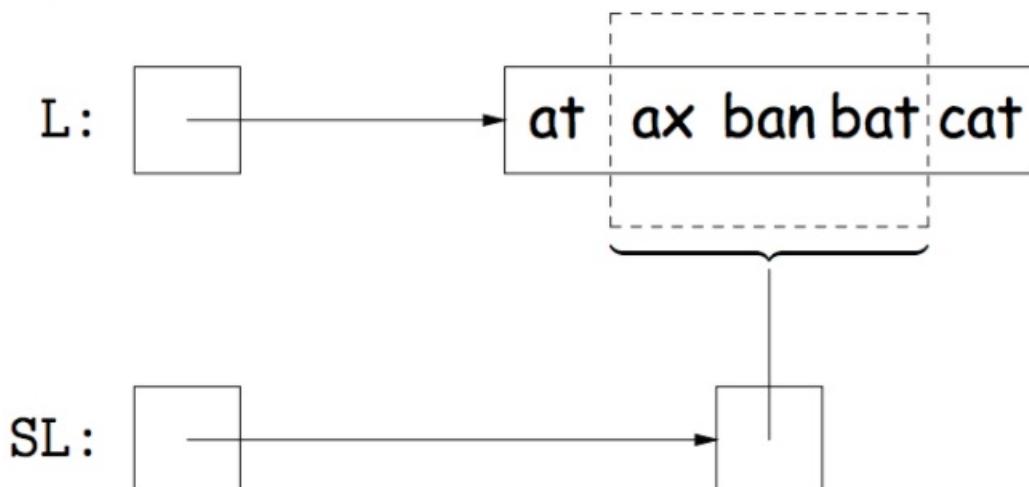
Views: Views are an alternative representation of an existed object. Views essentially limit the access that the user has to the underlying object. However, changes done through the views will affect the actual object.

```
/** Create an ArrayList. */
List<String> L = new ArrayList<>();
/** Add some items. */
L.add("at"); L.add("ax"); ...
```

Say you only want a list from index 1 and 4. Then you can use a method called sublist do this by the following and you will

```
/** subList me up fam. */
List<String> SL = l.subList(1, 4);
/** Mutate that thing. */
SL.set(0, "jug");
```

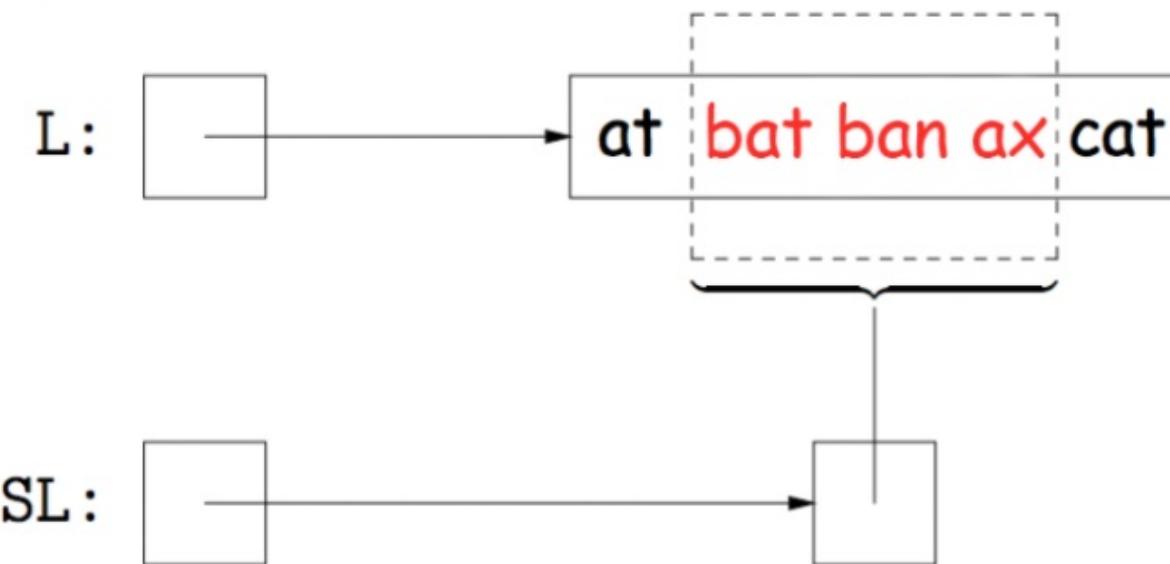
Now why is this useful? Well say we want to reverse only part of the list. For example in the below image, we would want to reverse ax ban bat in the above picture.



The most intuitive way is to create a method that takes in a list object and the indices which should be reversed. However, this can be a bit painful because we add some extraneous logic.

To get around doing this, we can just create a general reverse function that takes in a list and reverses that list. Because views mutates the underlying object that it represents, we can create a sublist like earlier and reverse the sublist. The end result would actually mutate

the actual list and not the copy.



This is all fine and dandy. However, it lends itself to an issue. You are claiming that you can give a list object that when manipulated, can affect the original list object- that's a bit weird. Just thinking "How do you return an actual List but still have it affect another List?" is a bit confusing. Well the answer is access methods.

The first thing to notice is that the sublist method returns a list type. Additionally, there is a defined class called Sublist which extends AbstractList. Since AbstractList it implements the List interface it and Sublist are List types.

```
List<Item> sublist(int start, int end){
 Return new this.Sublist(start,end);
}
```

This first thing to notice from the above code is that subList returns a List type.

```
Private class Sublist extends AbstractList<Item>{
 Private int start end;
 Sublist(inst start, int end){...}
}
```

Now the reason the sublist function returns a List is because the class SubList extends AbstractList. Since AbstractList implements the List interface both it and Sublist are List Types.

```
public Item get(int k){return AbstractList.this.get(start+k);}
public void add(int l, Item x){AbstractList.this.add(start+k, x); end+=1}
```

An observation that should be made is that getting the kth item from our sublist is the same as getting the the kth item from our original list with an offset equal to our start index. Because we are using a get method of our outer class (the most parent one) we change our original list.

Similarly, adding an element to our sublist is the same as adding an element to our original list with an offset equal to the start index of the sublist.

**The Takeaway:**

- APIs are pretty hard to design; however, having a coherent design philosophy can make your code much cleaner and easier to deal with.
- Inheritance is tempting to use frequently, but it has problems and should be used sparingly, only when you are certain about attributes of your classes (both those being extended and doing the extending).

# Introduction to Asymptotic Analysis

## 61B: Writing Efficient Programs

An engineer will do for a dime what any fool will do for a dollar.



Efficiency comes in two flavors:

- Programming cost (course to date).
  - How long does it take to develop your programs?
  - How easy is it to read, modify, and maintain your code?
    - More important than you might think!
    - Majority of cost is in maintenance, not development!
- Execution cost (from today to the end of the course).
  - How much time does your program take to execute?
  - How much memory does your program require?

[Video link](#)

We can consider the process of writing efficient programs from two different perspectives:

1. Programming Cost (*everything in the course up to this date*)
  - i. How long does it take for you to develop your programs?
  - ii. How easy is it to read or modify your code?
  - iii. How maintainable is your code? (very important — much of the cost comes from maintenance and scalability, not development!)
2. Execution Cost (*everything in the course from this point on*)
  - i. **Time complexity:** How much time does it take for your program to execute?
  - ii. **Space complexity:** How much memory does your program require?

## Example of Algorithm Cost

Objective: Determine if a *sorted* array contains any duplicates.

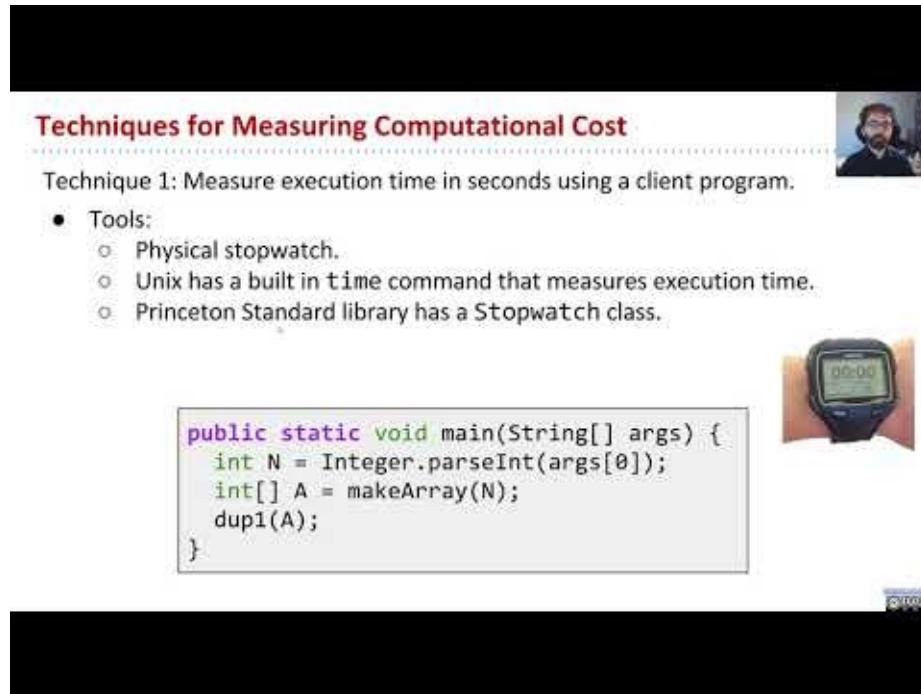
**Silly Algorithm:** Consider **every** pair, returning true if any match!

**Better Algorithm:** Take advantage of the *sorted* nature of our array.

- We know that if there are duplicates, they must be next to each other.
- Compare neighbors: return true first time you see a match! If no more items, return false.

We can see that the Silly algorithm seems like it's doing a lot more unnecessary, redundant work than the Better algorithm. But how much more work? How do we actually quantify or determine how efficient a program is? This chapter will provide you the formal techniques and tools to compare the efficiency of various algorithms!

## Runtime Characterization



**Techniques for Measuring Computational Cost**

Technique 1: Measure execution time in seconds using a client program.

- Tools:
  - Physical stopwatch.
  - Unix has a built in `time` command that measures execution time.
  - Princeton Standard library has a `Stopwatch` class.



```
public static void main(String[] args) {
 int N = Integer.parseInt(args[0]);
 int[] A = makeArray(N);
 dup1(A);
}
```

[Video link](#)

To investigate these techniques, we will be characterizing the runtimes of the following two functions, `dup1` and `dup2`. These are the two different ways of finding duplicates we discussed above.

Things to keep in mind about our characterizations:

- They should be simple and mathematically rigorous.
- They should also clearly demonstrate the superiority of `dup2` over `dup1`.

```

//Silly Duplicate: compare everything
public static boolean dup1(int[] A) {
 for (int i = 0; i < A.length; i += 1) {
 for (int j = i + 1; j < A.length; j += 1) {
 if (A[i] == A[j]) {
 return true;
 }
 }
 }
 return false;
}

//Better Duplicate: compare only neighbors
public static boolean dup2(int[] A) {
 for (int i = 0; i < A.length - 1; i += 1) {
 if (A[i] == A[i + 1]) {
 return true;
 }
 }
 return false;
}

```

## Techniques for Measuring Computational Cost

**Technique 1:** Measure execution time in seconds using a client program (i.e. actually seeing how quick our program runs in physical seconds)

### *Procedure*

- Use a physical stopwatch
- Or, Unix has a built in `time` command that measures execution time.
- Or, Princeton Standard library has a `stopwatch` class

### *Observations*

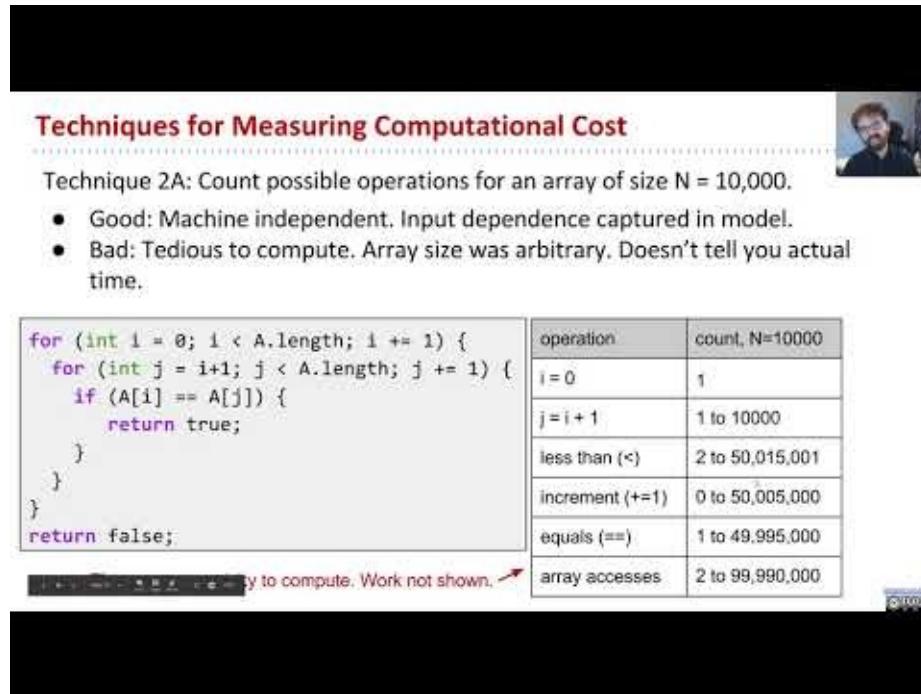
- As our input size increases, we can see that `dup1` takes a longer time to complete, whereas `dup2` completes at relatively around the same rate.

### *Pros vs. Cons*

- Pros: Very easy to measure (just run a stopwatch). Meaning is clear (look at the actual length of time it takes to complete).
- Cons: May take a lot of time to test. Results may also differ based on what kind of machine, compiler, input data, etc. you're running your program with.

So how does this method match our goals? It's simple, so that's good, but not mathematically rigorous. Moreover, the differences based on machine, compiler, input, etc. mean that the results may not clearly demonstrate the relationship between `dup1` and `dup2`.

How about another method?



**Techniques for Measuring Computational Cost**

Technique 2A: Count possible operations for an array of size N = 10,000.

- Good: Machine independent. Input dependence captured in model.
- Bad: Tedious to compute. Array size was arbitrary. Doesn't tell you actual time.

```
for (int i = 0; i < A.length; i += 1) {
 for (int j = i+1; j < A.length; j += 1) {
 if (A[i] == A[j]) {
 return true;
 }
 }
}
return false;
```

operation	count, N=10000
i = 0	1
j = i + 1	1 to 10000
less than (<)	2 to 50,015,001
increment (+=1)	0 to 50,005,000
equals (==)	1 to 49,995,000
array accesses	2 to 99,990,000

... many more operations to compute. Work not shown. ↗

[Video link](#)

**Technique 2A:** Count possible operations for an array of size N = 10,000.

```
for (int i = 0; i < A.length; i += 1) {
 for (int j = i+1; j < A.length; j += 1) {
 if (A[i] == A[j]) {
 return true;
 }
 }
}
return false;
```

*Procedure*

- Look at your code and the various operations that it uses (i.e. assignments, increments, etc.)
- Count the number of times each operation is performed.

*Observations*

- Some counts get tricky to count.
- How did we get some of these numbers? It can be complicated and tedious.

*Pros vs. Cons*

- Pros: Machine independent (for the most part). Input dependence captured in model.
- Cons: Tedious to compute. Array size was arbitrary (we counted for N = 10,000 — but

what about for larger N? For a smaller N? How many counts for those?). Number of operations doesn't tell you the actual time it takes for a certain operation to execute (some might be quicker to execute than others).

So maybe this one has solved some of our cons from the timing simulation above, but it has problems of its own.

**Technique 2B:** Count possible operations in terms of input array size N (symbolic counts)

*Pros vs. Cons*

- Pros: Still machine independent (just counting the number of operations still). Input dependence still captured in model. But now, it tells us how our algorithm scales as a function of the size of our input.
- Cons: Even more tedious to compute. Still doesn't tell us the actual time it takes!

**Checkpoint:** Applying techniques 2A and B to `dup2`

- Come up with counts for each operation, for the following code, with respect to N.
- Predict the ***rough*** magnitudes of each one!

```
for (int i = 0; i < A.length - 1; i += 1){
 if (A[i] == A[i + 1]) {
 return true;
 }
}
return false;
```

operation	symbolic count	count, N=10000
<code>i = 0</code>	1	1
<b>less than (&lt;)</b>		
<b>increment (+=1)</b>		
<b>equals (==)</b>		
<b>array accesses</b>		

**Answer:**

operation	symbolic count	count, N=10000
<b>i = 0</b>	1	1
<b>less than (&lt;)</b>	0 to N	0 to 10000
<b>increment (+=1)</b>	0 to N - 1	0 to 9999
<b>equals (==)</b>	1 to N - 1	1 to 9999
<b>array accesses</b>	2 to 2N - 2	2 to 19998

Note: It's okay if you were slightly off — as mentioned earlier, you want *rough* estimates.

**Checkpoint:** Now, considering the following two filled out tables, which algorithm seems better to you and why? `dup1`

operation	symbolic count	count, N=10000
<b>i = 0</b>	1	1
<b>j = i + 1</b>	1 to N	1 to 10000
<b>less than (&lt;)</b>	2 to $(N^2 + 3N + 2)/2$	2 to 50,015,001
<b>increment (+=1)</b>	0 to $(N^2 + N)/2$	0 to 50,005,000
<b>equals (==)</b>	1 to $(N^2 - N)/2$	1 to 49,995,000
<b>array accesses</b>	2 to $N^2 - N$	2 to 99,990,000

`dup2`

operation	symbolic count	count, N=10000
<b>i = 0</b>	1	1
<b>less than (&lt;)</b>	0 to N	0 to 10000
<b>increment (+=1)</b>	0 to N - 1	0 to 9999
<b>equals (==)</b>	1 to N - 1	1 to 9999
<b>array accesses</b>	2 to 2N - 2	2 to 19998

**Answer:** `dup2` is better! But why?

- An answer: It takes fewer operations to accomplish the same goal.
- Better answer: Algorithm scales better in the worst case  $(N^2 + 3N + 2)/2$  vs. N
- Even better answer: Parabolas ( $N^2$  grow faster than lines N)

- Note: This is the same idea as our “better” answer, but it provides a more general geometric intuition.

**Techniques for Measuring Computational Cost [dup2]**



Your turn: Try to come up with rough estimates for the symbolic and exact counts for at least one of the operations.

- Tip: Don’t worry about being off by one. Just try to predict the rough magnitudes of each.

```
for (int i = 0; i < A.length - 1; i += 1){
 if (A[i] == A[i + 1]) {
 return true;
 }
}
return false;
```

operation	sym. count	count, N=10000
i = 0	1	1
less than (<)		
increment (+=1)		
equals (==)		
array accesses		

[Video link](#)

## Asymptotic Behavior

In most cases, we only care about what happens for very large N (asymptotic behavior). We want to consider what types of algorithms would best handle big amounts of data, such as in the examples listed below:

- Simulation of billions of interacting particles
- Social network with billions of users
- Encoding billions of bytes of video data

Algorithms that scale well (i.e. look like lines) have better asymptotic runtime behavior than algorithms that scale relatively poorly (i.e. looks like parabolas).

## Parabolas vs. Lines

What about constants? If we had functions that took  $2N^2$  operations vs.  $500N$  operations, wouldn’t the one that only takes  $2N^2$  operations be faster in certain cases, like if  $N = 4$  (32 vs. 20,000 operations).

- Yes! For some small N,  $2N^2$  may be smaller than  $500N$ .

- However, as  $N$  grows, the number of operations that  $2N^2$  takes increases much faster than those of the  $500N$  function.
- i.e.  $N = 10,000 \rightarrow 2*100000000$  vs.  $5 * 1000000$

The important thing is the “shape” of our graph (i.e. parabolic vs. linear) Let us (for now) informally refer to the shape of our graph as the “orders of growth”.

**Intuitive Simplification 2: Restrict Attention to One Operation**

Simplification 2: Pick some representative operation to act as a proxy for the overall runtime.

- Good choice: **increment**. ← There are other good choices!
- Bad choice: assignment of  $j = i + 1$ .

We call our choice the “**cost model**”.

```

for (int i = 0; i < A.length; i += 1) {
 for (int j = i+1; j < A.length; j += 1) {
 if (A[i] == A[j]) {
 return true;
 }
 }
}
return false;

```

cost model = increment

operation	worst case count
<del>i = 0</del>	<del>1</del>
<del>j = i + 1</del>	<del>N</del>
<del>less than (&lt;)</del>	<del>(N<sup>2</sup>+3N+2)/2</del>
<del>increment (+=1)</del>	<del>(N<sup>2</sup>+N)/2</del>
<del>equals (==)</del>	<del>(N<sup>2</sup>-N)/2</del>
<del>array accesses</del>	<del>N · N</del>

[Video link](#)

## Returning to Duplicate Finding

Returning to our original goals of characterizing the runtimes of `dup1` vs. `dup2`

- They should be **simple** and **mathematically rigorous**.
- They should also clearly demonstrate the **superiority of dup2 over dup1**.

We've accomplished the second task! We were able to clearly see that `dup2` performed better than `dup1`. However, we didn't do it in a very simple or mathematically rigorous way.

We did however talk about how `dup1` performed “like” a parabola, and `dup2` performed “like” a line. Now, we'll be more formal about what we meant by those statements by applying the four simplifications.

## Intuitive Simplification 1: Consider only the Worst Case

When comparing algorithms, we often only care about the worst case (though we'll see some exceptions later in this course).

**Checkpoint:** Order of Growth Identification

Consider the counts for the algorithm below. What do you expect will be the order of growth of the runtime for the algorithm?

- $N$  [linear]
- $N^2$  [quadratic]
- $N^3$  [cubic]
- $N^6$  [sextic]

operation	count
<b>less than (&lt;)</b>	$100N^2 + 3N$
<b>greater than (&gt;)</b>	$N^3 + 1$
<b>and (&amp;&amp;)</b>	5,000

**Answer:** It's cubic ( $N^3$ )!

- Why? Here's an argument:
- Suppose `<` takes  $\alpha$  nanoseconds, `>` takes  $\beta$  nanoseconds, and `&&` takes  $\gamma$  nanoseconds.
- Total time is  $\alpha(100N^2 + 3N) + \beta(2N^3 + 1) + 5000\gamma$  nanoseconds.
- For very large  $N$ , the  $2\beta N^3$  term is much larger than the others.
  - You can think of it in terms of calculus if it helps.
  - What happens as  $N$  approaches infinity? When it becomes super large? Which term ends up dominating?
  - Very **important** point/observation to understand why this term is much larger!

## Intuitive Simplification 2: Restrict Attention to One Operation

Pick some representative operation to act as a proxy for overall runtime.

- Good choice: `increment`, or **less than** or **equals** or **array accesses**
- Bad choice: **assignment of** `j = i + 1`, or `i = 0`

The operation we choose can be called the “**cost model**.”

## Intuitive Simplification 3: Eliminate Low Order Terms

Ignore lower order terms!

**Sanity check:** Why does this make sense? (Related to the checkpoint above!)

## Intuitive Simplification 4: Eliminate Multiplicative Constants

Ignore multiplicative constants.

- Why? No real meaning!
- Remember that by choosing a single representative operation, we already “threw away” some information
- Some operations had counts of  $3N^2$ ,  $N^2/2$ , etc. In general, they are all in the family/shape of  $N^2$ !

This step is also related to the example earlier of  $500N$  vs.  $2N^2$ .

## Simplification Summary

- Only consider the worst case.
- Pick a representative operation (aka: cost model)
- Ignore lower order terms
- Ignore multiplicative constants.

**Checkpoint:** Apply these four steps to `dup2`, given the following tables.

operation	count
<code>i = 0</code>	1
<code>less than (&lt;)</code>	0 to N
<code>increment (+=1)</code>	0 to N - 1
<code>equals (==)</code>	1 to N - 1
<code>array accesses</code>	2 to 2N - 2

operation	worst case orders of growth

**Sample Answer:** Array accesses |  $N$ , or less than/increment>equals |  $N$

## Summary of our (Painful) Analysis Process

- Construct a table of exact counts of all possible operations (takes lots of effort!)
- Convert table into worst case order of growth using 4 simplifications.

But, what if we just avoided building the table from the get-go, by using our simplifications from the very start?

**Analysis of Nested For Loops (Based on Exact Count)**

Find the order of growth of the worst case runtime of `dup1`.

`N = 6`

	==	==	==	==	==
0		==	==	==	==
1			==	==	==
2				==	==
3					==
4					
5					

`i`

`j`

```
int N = A.length;
for (int i = 0; i < N; i += 1)
 for (int j = i + 1; j < N; j += 1)
 if (A[i] == A[j])
 return true;
return false;
```

Worst case number of == operations:  
 $C = 1 + 2 + 3 + \dots + (N - 3) + (N - 2) + (N - 1)$

[Video link](#)

## Simplified Analysis Process

Rather than building the entire table, we can instead:

- Choose our cost model (representative operation we want to count).
- Figure out the order of growth for the count of our representative operation by either:
  - Making an exact count, and discarding unnecessary pieces
  - Or, using intuition/inspection to determine orders of growth (comes with practice!)

We'll now re-analyze `dup1` using this process.

## Analysis of Nested For Loops: Exact Count

Find order of growth of worst case runtime of `dup1`.

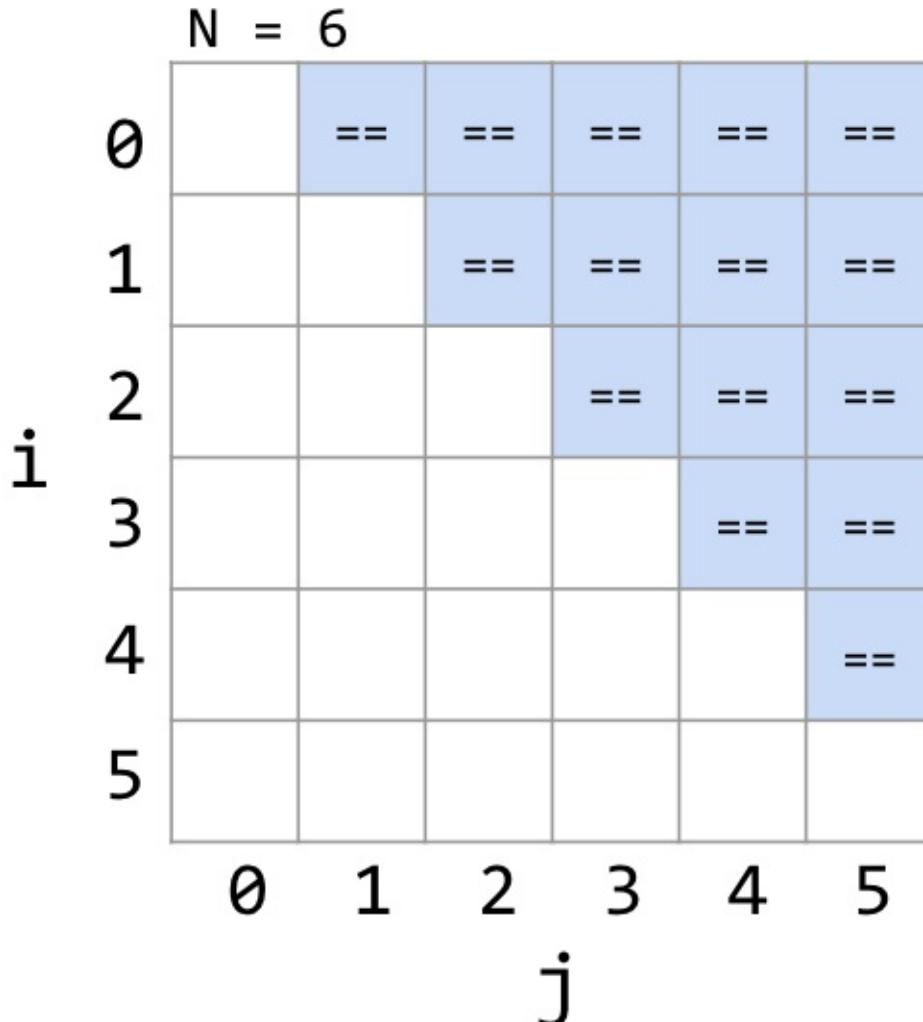
```

int N = A.length;
for (int i = 0; i < N; i += 1)
 for (int j = i + 1; j < N; j += 1)
 if (A[i] == A[j])
 return true;
return false;

```

**Cost model:** number of `==` operations

Given the following chart, how can we determine how many `==` occurs? The y axis represents each increment of `i`, and the x access represents each increment of `j`.



- Worst case number of `==` operations:
  - Cost =  $1 + 2 + 3 + \dots + (N-2) + (N-1)$
- How do we sum up this cost?
- Well, we know that it can also be written as:
  - Cost =  $(N-1) + (N-2) + \dots + 3 + 2 + 1$
- Let's sum up these two Cost equations:
  - $2 \times \text{Cost} = N + N + N + \dots + N$

- How many N terms are there?
  - $N-1!$  (the pairs that summed up to N, through adding the two Cost equations together)
- Therefore:  $2 \cdot \text{Cost} = N(N-1)$
- Therefore:  $\text{Cost} = N(N-1)/2$
- If we do our simplification (throwing away lower order terms, getting rid of multiplicative constants), we get worst case orders of growth =  $N^2$

## Analysis of Nested For Loops: Geometric Argument

- We can see that the number of equals can be given by the area of a right triangle, which has a side length of  $N - 1$
- Therefore, the order of growth of area is  $N^2$
- Takes time and practice to be able to do this!

[https://www.youtube.com/watch?](https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=sMlmXdKb9fA&list=PL8FaHk7qbOD69aH2dhqcY64VMmX7frTUO&index=8)

[v=sMlmXdKb9fA&list=PL8FaHk7qbOD69aH2dhqcY64VMmX7frTUO&index=8](https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=sMlmXdKb9fA&list=PL8FaHk7qbOD69aH2dhqcY64VMmX7frTUO&index=8)

## Big Theta

## Formalizing Order of Growth

Given some function,  $Q(N)$ , we can apply our last two simplifications to get the order of growth of  $Q(N)$ .

- Reminder: last two simplifications are dropping lower order terms and multiplicative constants.
- Example:  $Q(N) = 3N^3 + N^2$
- After applying the simplifications for order of growth, we get:  $N^3$

Now, we'll use the formal notation of "Big-Theta" to represent how we've been analyzing our code.

---

**Checkpoint:** What's the shape/orders of growth for the following 5 functions?

function	order of growth
$N^3 + 3N^4$	
$1/N + N^3$	
$1/N + 5$	
$Ne^N + N$	
$40\sin(N) + 4N^2$	

**Answer:**

order of growth
$N^4$
$N^3$
1
$Ne^N$
$N^2$

## Big-Theta

Suppose we have a function  $R(N)$  with order of growth  $f(N)$ . In "Big-Theta" notation we write this as  $R(N) \in \Theta(f(N))$ . This notation is the formal way of representing the "families" we've been finding above.

Examples (from the checkpoint above):

- $N^3 + 3N^4 \in \Theta(N^4)$
- $1/N + N^3 \in \Theta(N^3)$
- $1/N + 5 \in \Theta(1)$
- $Ne^N + N \in \Theta(Ne^N)$
- $40\sin(N) + 4N^2 \in \Theta(N^2)$

## Formal Definition

$R(N) \in \Theta(f(N))$  means that there exists positive constants  $k_1, k_2$  such that:

$k_1 \cdot f(N) \leq R(N) \leq k_2 \cdot f(N)$ , for all values of  $N$  greater than some  $N_0$  (a very large  $N$ ).

## Big-Theta and Runtime Analysis

Using this notation doesn't change anything about how we analyze runtime (no need to find the constants  $k_1, k_2$ )!

The only difference is that we use the  $\Theta$  symbol in the place of "order of growth" (i.e. worst case runtime:  $\Theta(N^2)$ )

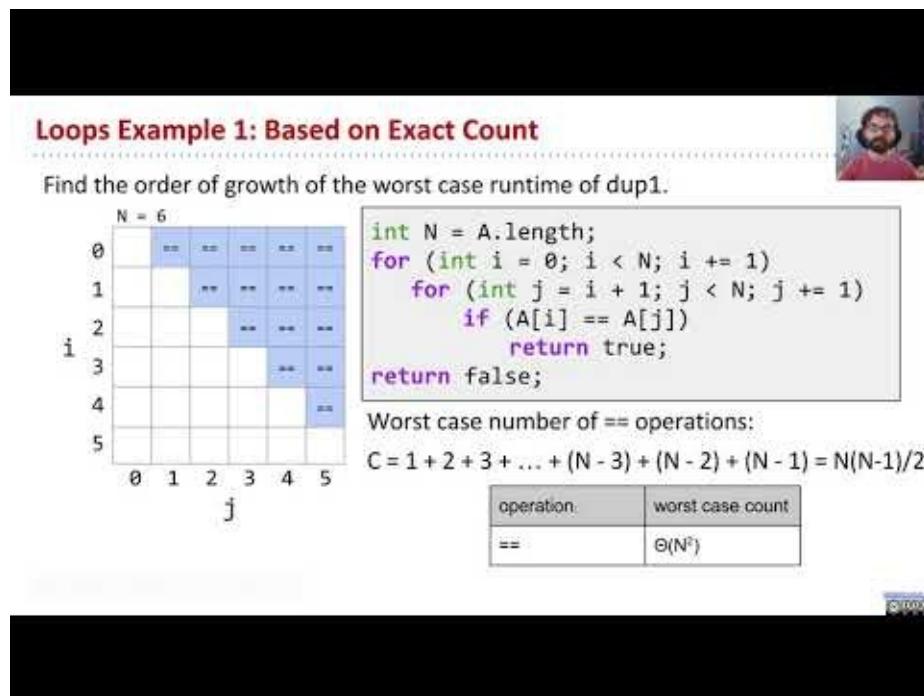
## Summary

- Given a piece of code, we can express its runtime as a function  $R(N)$ 
  - $N$  is some **property** of the input of the function
    - i.e. oftentimes,  $N$  represents the **size** of the input
- Rather than finding  $R(N)$  exactly, we instead usually only care about the **order of growth** of  $R(N)$ .
- One approach (not universal):
  - Choose a representative operation
  - Let  $C(N) =$  count of how many times that operation occurs, as a function of  $N$ .
  - Determine order of growth  $f(N)$  for  $C(N)$ , i.e.  $C(N) \in \Theta(f(N))$
  - Often (but not always) we consider the worst case count.
  - If operation takes constant time, then  $R(N) \in \Theta(f(N))$

# Asymptotics, Part 2

## A first example with Loops

Now that we've seen some runtime analysis, let's work through some more difficult examples. Our goal is to get some practice with the patterns and methods involved in runtime analysis. This can be a tricky idea to get a handle on, so the more practice the better.



**Loops Example 1: Based on Exact Count**

Find the order of growth of the worst case runtime of dup1.

`int N = A.length;
for (int i = 0; i < N; i += 1)
 for (int j = i + 1; j < N; j += 1)
 if (A[i] == A[j])
 return true;
return false;`

Worst case number of == operations:  
 $C = 1 + 2 + 3 + \dots + (N - 3) + (N - 2) + (N - 1) = N(N-1)/2$

operation:	worst case count
<code>==</code>	$\Theta(N^2)$

[Video link](#)

Last time, we saw the function `dup1`, that checks for the first time any entry is duplicated in a list:

```
int N = A.length;
for (int i = 0; i < N; i += 1)
 for (int j = i + 1; j < N; j += 1)
 if (A[i] == A[j])
 return true;
return false;
```

We have two ways of approaching our runtime analysis: first, by counting the number of operations; second, a geometric argument.

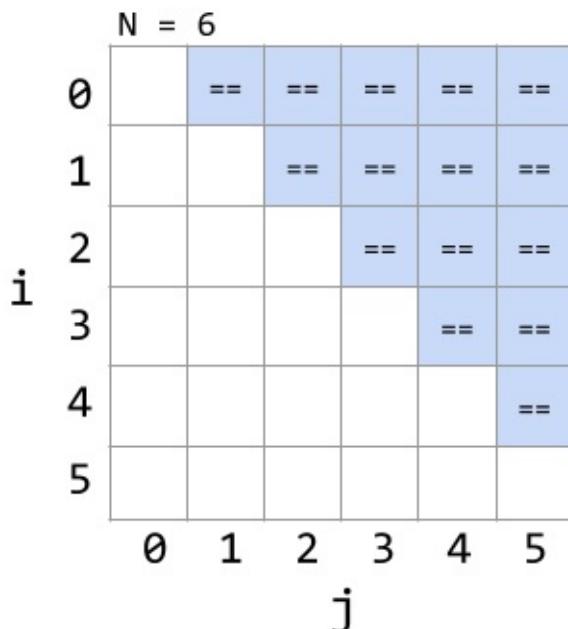
First method: Since the main repeating operation is the comparator, we will count the number of `==` operations that must occur. The first time through the outer loop, the inner loop will run  $N-1$  times. The second time, it will run  $N-2$  times. Then  $N-3\dots$ . In the worst case, we have to go through every entry (the outer loop runs  $N$  times).

In the end, we see that the number of comparisons is:

$$C = 1 + 2 + 3 + \dots + (N-3) + (N-2) + (N-1) = N(N-1)/2$$

$N(N-1)/2$  is of the family  $N^2$ . Since `==` is a constant time operation, the overall runtime in the worst case is  $\theta(N^2)$ .

Second method: We can also approach this from a geometric view. Let's draw out when we use `==` operations in the grid of  $i,j$  combinations:



We see that the number of `==` operations is the same as the area of a right triangle with a side length of  $N-1$ . Since area is in the  $N^2$  family, we see again that the overall runtime is  $\theta(N^2)$ .

## Loop Example 2

**Loops Example 2: Prelude to Attempt #2**

```
public static void printParty(int N) {
 for (int i = 1; i <= N; i = i * 2) {
 for (int j = 0; j < i; j += 1) {
 System.out.println("hello");
 int ZUG = 1 + 1;
 }
 }
}
```

Find a simple  $f(N)$  such that the runtime  $R(N) \in \Theta(f(N))$ .

Cost model  $C(N)$ , `println("hello")` calls:

N	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18
$C(N)$	1	3	3	7	7	7	7	15	15	15	15	15	15	15	15	31	31	31

$C(N) = 1 + 2 + 4 + \dots + N$ , if  $N$  is a power of 2

[Video link](#)

Let's look at a more involved example next. Consider the following function, with similar nested for loops:

```
public static void printParty(int N) {
 for (int i = 1; i <= N; i = i * 2) {
 for (int j = 0; j < i; j += 1) {
 System.out.println("hello");
 int ZUG = 1 + 1;
 }
 }
}
```

The first loop advances by *multiplying* `i` by 2 each time. The inner loop runs from 0 to the current value of `i`. The two operations inside the loop are both constant time, so let's approach this by asking "how many times does this print out "hello" for a given value of N?"

Our visualization tool from above helped us see dup1's runtime, so let's use a similar approach here. We'll lay out the grid for the nested for loops, and then track the total number of print statements needed for a given N below.

If N is 1, then `i` only reaches 1, and `j` is only 0, since  $0 < 1$ . So there is only one print statement:

	0	1	2	3	4	5											
i	0	1	2	3	4	5											
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16
N	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17
C(N)	1																

If N is 2, the next time through the loop `i` will be  $1 * 2 = 2$ , and `j` can reach 1. The total number of print statements will be 3: 1 for the first loop plus 2 for the second time through.

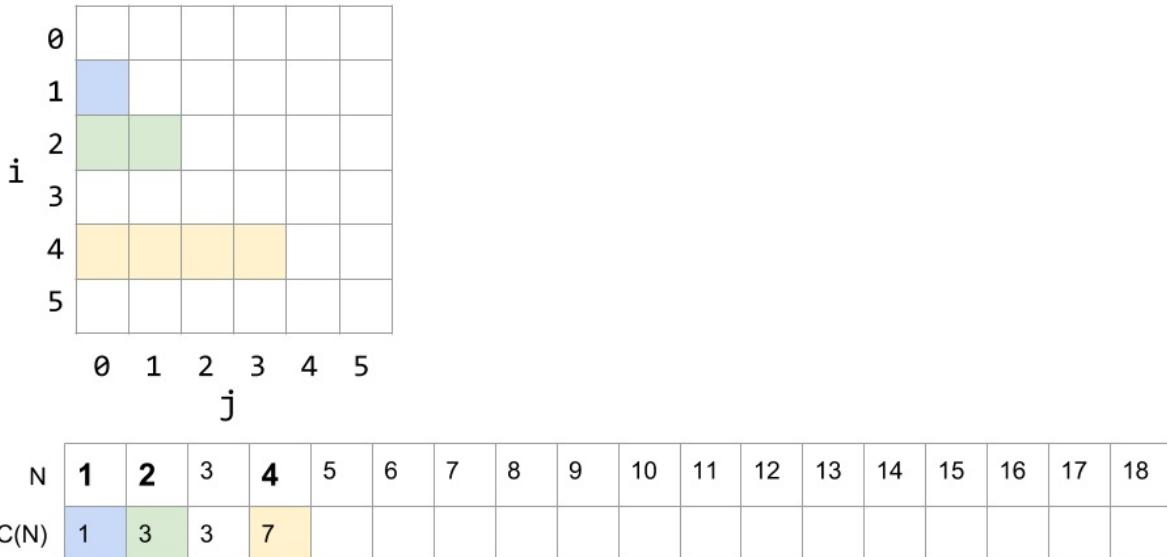
	0	1	2	3	4	5											
i	0	1	2	3	4	5											
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16
N	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17
C(N)	1	3															

What happens when N is 3? Does `i` go through another loop?

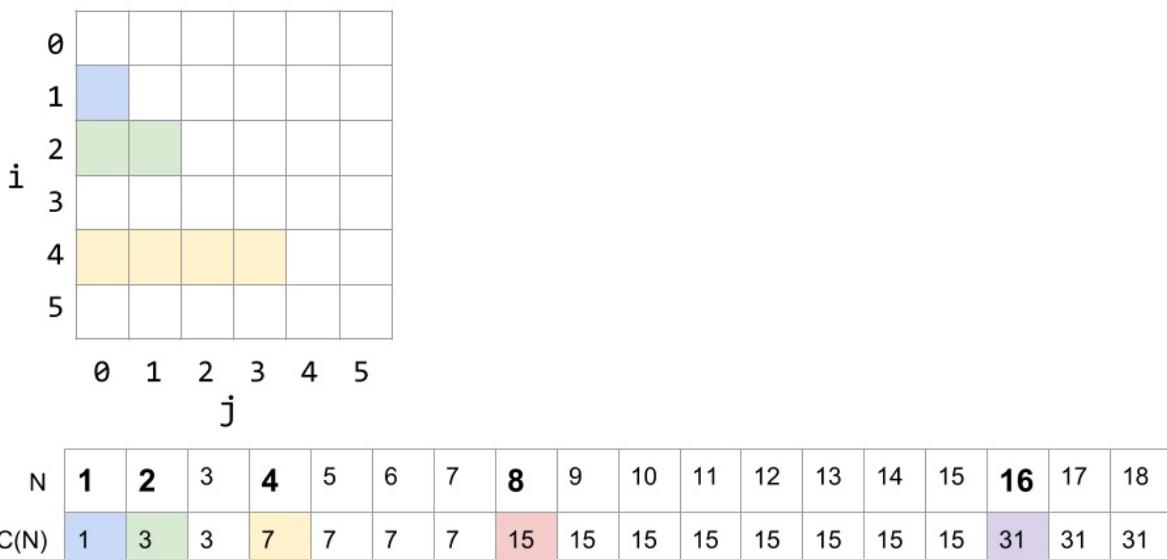
...

Well, after the second loop,  $i = 2 * 2 = 4$ , which is greater than N, so the outer loop does not continue, and ends after `i = 2`, just like N = 2 did. N = 3 will have the same number of print statements as N = 2.

The next change is at  $N=4$ , where there will be 4 prints when  $i = 4$ , 3 prints when  $i = 2$ , and 1 print when  $i = 1$  (remember  $i$  never equals 3). So a total of 7.



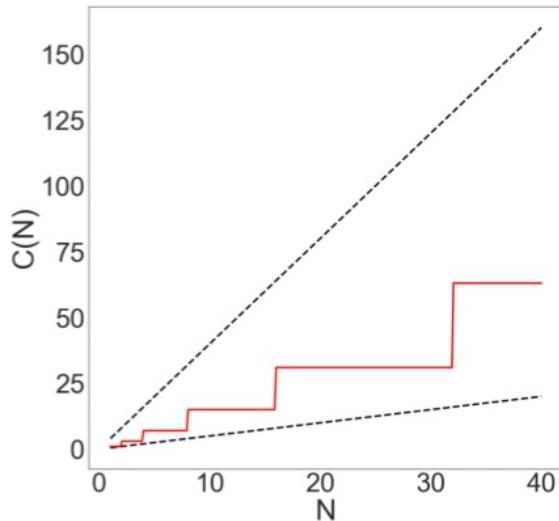
We can keep filling out our diagram to get a fuller picture. Here it is up to  $N = 18$ :



What we see, if we add up all the counts at each stage of the loops, is that the number of print statements is:  $C(N) = 1 + 2 + 4 + \dots + N$  (if  $N$  is a power of 2).

But what does this mean for the runtime?

Again, we can think of this in a couple ways. Since we're already on a graphical roll, let's start there. If we graph the trajectory of  $0.5 N$  (lower dashed line), and  $4N$  (upper dashed line), and  $C(N)$  itself (the red staircase line) we see that  $C(N)$  is fully bounded between those two dashed lines.



Therefore, the runtime (by definition) must also be linear!

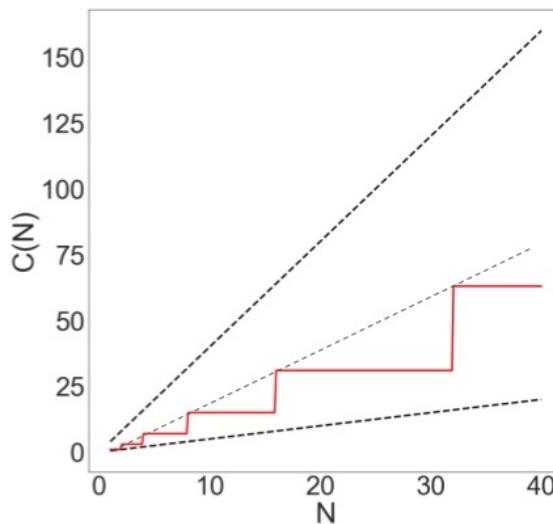
Let's look at this another way as well:

We can solve our equation from above with the power of mathematics, and find that:

$C(N) = 1 + 2 + 4 + \dots + N = 2N - 1$  (again if  $N$  is a power of 2). For example, If  $N = 8$   
 $1 + 2 + 4 + 8 = 15 = 2 * 8 - 1$

And by removing lesser terms and multiplicative constants, we know that  $2N - 1$  is in the linear family.

We can also see this on our graph by plotting  $2N$ :



## There is no magic shortcut :(



Repeat After Me...



There is no magic shortcut for these problems (well... usually)

- Runtime analysis often requires careful thought.
- CS70 and especially CS170 will cover this in much more detail.
- This is not a math class, though we'll expect you to know these:
  - $1 + 2 + 3 + \dots + Q = Q(Q+1)/2 = \Theta(Q^2)$  ← Sum of First Natural Numbers ([Link](#))
  - $1 + 2 + 4 + 8 + \dots + Q = 2Q - 1 = \Theta(Q)$  ← Sum of First Powers of 2 ([Link](#))

Where Q is a power of 2.

```
public static void printParty(int n) {
 for (int i = 1; i <= n; i = i * 2) {
 for (int j = 0; j < i; j += 1) {
 System.out.println("hello");
 int ZUG = 1 + 1;
 }
 }
}
```



[Video link](#)

It would be really nice if there were some magic way to look at an algorithm and just *know* its runtime. It would be super convenient if all nested for loops were  $N^2$ . They're not. And we know this because we just did two nested for loop examples above, each with different runtimes.

In the end, there is no shortcut to doing runtime analysis. It requires careful thought. But there are a few useful techniques and things to know.

**Techniques:** *Find exact sum Write out examples Draw pictures*

We used each of these in the examples above.

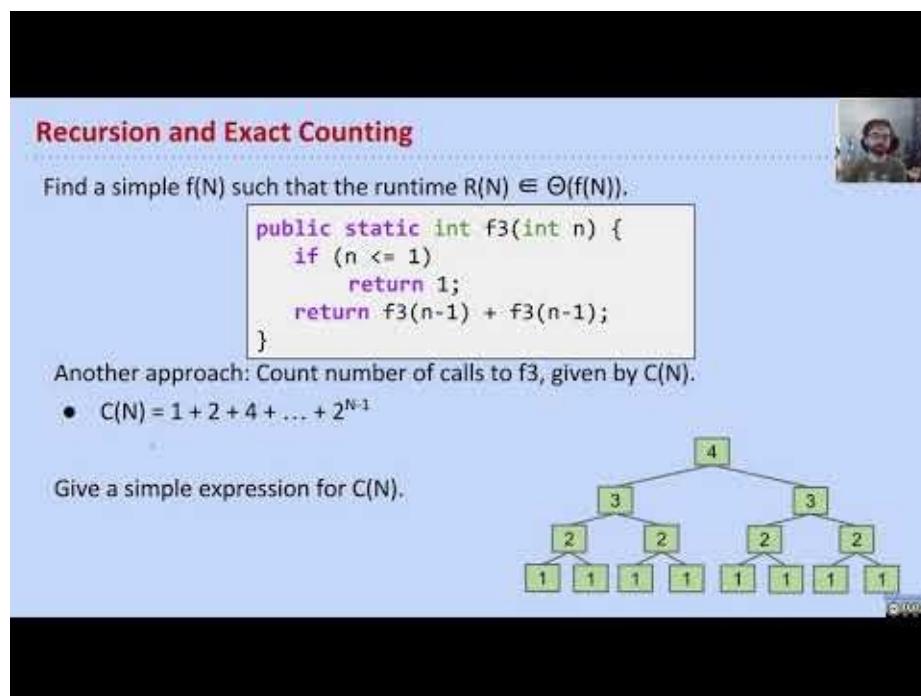
**Sum Things to Know** Here are two important sums you'll see quite often, and should remember:

$$1 + 2 + 3 + \dots + Q = Q(Q+1)/2 = \Theta(Q^2) \text{ (Sum of First Natural Numbers)}$$

$$1 + 2 + 4 + 8 + \dots + Q = 2Q - 1 = \Theta(Q) \text{ (Sum of First Powers of 2)}$$

You saw both of these above, and they'll return again and again in runtime analysis.

## Recursion



**Recursion and Exact Counting**

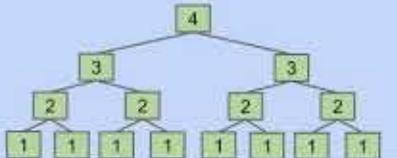
Find a simple  $f(N)$  such that the runtime  $R(N) \in \Theta(f(N))$ .

```
public static int f3(int n) {
 if (n <= 1)
 return 1;
 return f3(n-1) + f3(n-1);
}
```

Another approach: Count number of calls to  $f3$ , given by  $C(N)$ .

- $C(N) = 1 + 2 + 4 + \dots + 2^{N-1}$

Give a simple expression for  $C(N)$ .



[Video link](#)

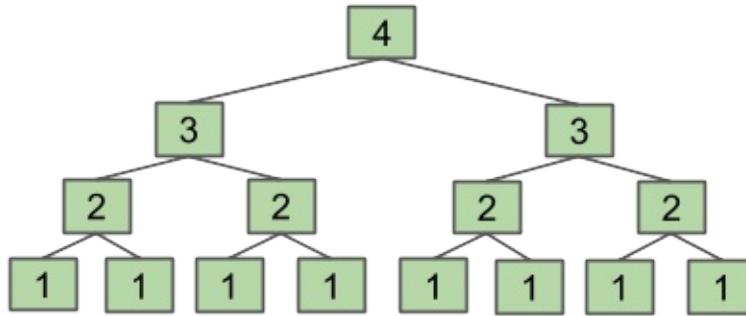
Now that we've done a couple of nested for loops, let's take a look at a recursive example.

Consider the function `f3` :

```
public static int f3(int n) {
 if (n <= 1)
 return 1;
 return f3(n-1) + f3(n-1);
}
```

What does this function do?

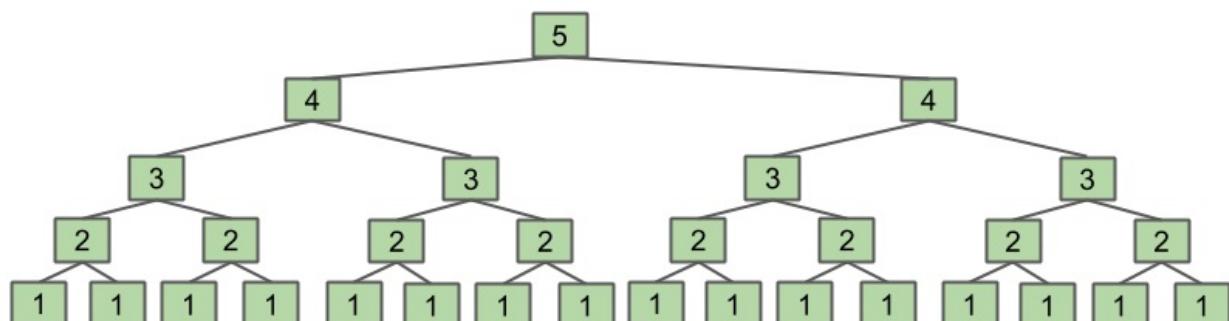
Let's think of an example. If we call `f3(4)`, it will return `f3(4-1) + f3(4-1)` which are each `f3(3-1) + f3(3-1)`, which are each `f3(2-1) + f3(2-1)`, which each return 1. So we see that in the end we have `f3(2-1)` summed 8 times, which equals 8. We can visualize this as a tree, where each level is the argument to the function:



You can do a couple more examples, and see that this function returns  $2^{N-1}$ . This is useful for getting a sense of what the function is doing.

#### *The Intuitive Method*

Now, let's think about the runtime. We can notice that every time we add one to N, we double the amount of work that has to be done:



This intuitive argument shows that the runtime is  $2^N$ .

This is a pretty good argument, but let's work this example a couple more ways.

#### *The Algebraic Method*

The second way to approach this problem is to count the number of calls to `f3` involved. For instance:

$$C(1) = 1 \quad C(2) = 1 + 2 \quad C(3) = 1 + 2 + 4 \quad C(N) = 1 + 2 + 4 + \dots + ???$$

How do we generalize this last case? A useful approach is to do another couple examples. What is  $C(4)$ ?

Well, we can look at our helpful diagram for  $f_3(4)$  above, and see that the final row has 8 boxes, so:

$$C(4) = 1 + 2 + 4 + 8 \text{ and } C(5) = 1 + 2 + 4 + 8 + 16$$

The final term in each of these is equal to  $2^{N-1}$ , for example:  $16 = 2^{5-1}$ ,  $8 = 2^{4-1}$  ...

Our general form then is:  $C(N) = 1 + 2 + 4 + \dots + 2^{N-1}$

And this should start to look a bit familiar. Above we saw the **sum of the first powers of 2**:  $1 + 2 + 4 + 8 + \dots + Q = 2Q - 1$

In this case,  $Q = 2^{N-1}$ .

$$\text{So, } C(N) = 2Q - 1 = 2(2^{N-1}) - 1 = 2^N - 1$$

The work during each call is constant (not including recursive work), so this is  $\theta(2^N)$ .

### *Recurrence Relations*

This method is not required reading and is outside of the course scope, but worth mentioning for interest's sake.

We can use a "recurrence relation" to count the number of calls, instead of an algebraic approach. This looks like:

$$C(1) = 1 \quad C(N) = 2C(N - 1) + 1$$

Expanding this out with a method we will not go over but you can read about in the slides or online, we reach a similar sum to the one above, and can again reduce it to  $2^N - 1$ , reaching the same result of  $\theta(2^N)$ .

## Binary Search

**Binary Search (adapted from Kevin Wayne's demo)**



Finding a key in a sorted array.

- Compare key against middle entry.
  - Too small, go left.
  - Too big, go right.
  - Equal, found.

**Demo 2:** An unsuccessful search for 49.

$N = 9 - 0 + 1 = 10$

Input:	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	99
--------	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----

49

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

↑  
lo  
0      ↑  
mid  
4      ↑  
hi  
9

[Video link](#)

Binary search is a nice way of searching a list for a particular item. It requires the list to be in sorted order, and uses that fact to find an element quickly.

To do a binary search, we start in the middle of the list, and check if that's our desired element. If not, we ask: is this element bigger or smaller than our element?

If it's bigger, then we know we only have to look at the half of the list with smaller elements. If it's too small, then we only look at the half with bigger elements. In this way, we can cut in half the number of options we have left at each step, until we find it.

What's the worst possible case? When the element we want isn't in the list at all. Then we will make comparisons until we've eliminated all regions of the list, and there's no more bigger or smaller halves left.

For an animation of binary search, see [these slides](#).

What's the intuitive runtime of binary search? Take a minute and use the tools you know to consider this.

...

We start with  $n$  options, then  $n/2$ , then  $n/4$  ... until we have just 1. Each time, we cut the array in half, so in the end we must perform a total of  $\log_2(n)$  operations. Each of the  $\log_2(n)$  operations, eg. finding the middle element and comparing with it, takes constant time. So the overall runtime then is order  $\log_2(n)$ .

It's important to note, however that each step doesn't cut it *exactly* in half. If the array is of even length, and there is no 'middle', we have to take either a smaller or a larger portion. But this is a good intuitive approach.

We'll do a precise way next.

**Binary Search (Exact Count)**

```
static int binarySearch(String[] sorted, String x, int lo, int hi)
 if (lo > hi) return -1;
 int m = (lo + hi) / 2;
 int cmp = x.compareTo(sorted[m]);
 if (cmp < 0) return binarySearch(sorted, x, lo, m - 1);
 else if (cmp > 0) return binarySearch(sorted, x, m + 1, hi);
 else return m;
}
```

Goal: Find worst case runtime in terms of  $N = hi - lo + 1$  [i.e. # of items]

- Cost model: Number of `binarySearch` calls.

N	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13
C(N)	1	2	2	3	3	3	3	4	4	4	4	4	4

$$C(N) = \lfloor \log_2(N) \rfloor + 1$$

[Video link](#)

To precisely calculate the runtime of binary search, we'll count the number of operations, just as we've done previously.

First, we define our cost model: let's use the number of recursive binary search calls. Since the number of operations inside each call is constant, the number of calls will be the only thing varying based on the size of the input, so it's a good cost model.

Like we've seen before, let's do some example counts for specific N. As an exercise, try to fill this table in before continuing:

N	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13
Count													

Alright, here's the result:

N	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13
Count	1	2	2	3	3	3	3	4	4	4	4	4	4

These seems to support our intuition above of  $\log_2(n)$ . We can see that the count seems to increase by one only when N hits a power of 2.

...but we can be even more precise:  $C(N) = \lfloor \log_2(N) \rfloor + 1$  (These L-shaped bars are the "floor" function, which is the result of the expression rounded down to the nearest integer.)

A couple properties worth knowing (see below for proofs):  $\lfloor f(N) \rfloor = \Theta(f(N))$

$$\lceil f(N) \rceil = \Theta(f(N)) \log_p(N) = \Theta(\log_q(N))$$

The last one essentially states that for logarithmic runtimes, the base of the logarithm doesn't matter at all, because they are all equivalent in terms of Big-O (this can be seen by applying the logarithm change of base). Applying these simplifications, we see that

$$\Theta(\lfloor \log_2(N) \rfloor) = \Theta(\log N)$$

just as we expected from our intuition.

---

**Example Proof:** Prove  $\lfloor f(N) \rfloor = \Theta(f(N))$  **Solution:**

$f(N) - 1/2 < f(N) \leq \lfloor f(N) + 1/2 \rfloor \leq f(N) + 1/2$  Simplifying  $f(N) + 1/2$  and  $f(N) - 1/2$  according to our big theta rules by dropping the constants, we see that they are of order  $f(N)$ . Therefore  $\lfloor f(N) + 1/2 \rfloor$  is bounded by two expressions of order  $f(N)$ , and is therefore also  $\Theta(f(N))$

**Exercise:** Prove  $\lceil f(N) \rceil = \Theta(f(N))$  **Exercise:** Prove  $\log_p(N) = \Theta(\log_q(N))$

---

**One cool fact to wrap up with:** Log time is super good! It's almost as fast as constant time, and way better than linear time. This is why we like binary search, rather than stepping one by one through our list and looking for the right thing.

To show this concretely:

N	$\log_2 N$	Typical runtime (nanoseconds)
100	6.6	1
100,000	16.6	2.5
100,000,000	26.5	4
100,000,000,000	36.5	5.5
100,000,000,000,000	46.5	7

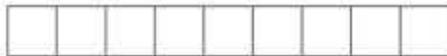
## Merge Sort

**Array Merging**

Given two sorted arrays, the merge operation combines them into a single sorted array by successively copying the smallest item from the two arrays into a target array.

2	3	6	10	11
---	---	---	----	----

4	5	7	8
---	---	---	---

[Video link](#)

In our last example, we'll analyze merge sort, another cool sorting algorithm.

First, let's remind ourselves of selection sort, which we will initially use as a building block for merge sort.

Selection sort works off two basic steps:

- Find the smallest item among the unsorted items, move it to the front, and ‘fix’ it in place.
- Sort the remaining unsorted/unfixed items using selection sort.

If we analyze selection sort, we see that it's  $\Theta(N^2)$ .

**Exercise:** To convince yourself that selection sort has  $\Theta(N^2)$  runtime, work through the geometric approach (try drawing out the state of the list at every sort call), or count the operations.

Let's introduce one other idea here: **arbitrary units of time**. While the exact time something will take will depend on the machine, on the particular operations, etc., we can get a general sense of time through our arbitrary units (AU).

If we run an  $N=6$  selection sort, and the runtime is order  $N^2$ , it will take  $\sim 36$  AU to run. If  $N=64$ , it'll take  $\sim 2048$  AU to run. Now we don't know if that's 2048 nanoseconds, or seconds, or years, but we can get a relative sense of the time needed for each size of  $N$ .

Hold onto this thought for later analysis.

Now that we have selection sort, let's talk about **merging**.

Say we have two **sorted** arrays that we want to combine into a single big sorted array. We could append one to the other, and then re-sort it, but that doesn't make use of the fact that each individual array is already sorted. How can we use this to our advantage?

It turns out, we can merge them more quickly using the sorted property. The smallest element must be at the start of one of the two lists. So let's compare those, and put the smallest element at the start of our new list.

Now, the next smallest element has to be at the new start of one of the two lists. We can continue comparing the first two elements and moving the smallest into place until one list is empty, then copy the rest of the other list over into the end of the new list.

To see an animation of this idea, [go here](#).

What is the runtime of merge? We can use the number of "write" operations to the new list as our cost model, and count the operations. Since we have to write each element of each list only once, the runtime is  $\Theta(N)$ .

Selection sort is slow, and merging is fast. How do we combine these to make sorting faster?

**Example 5: Mergesort**

Mergesort does merges all the way down (no selection sort):

- If array is of size 1, return.
- Mergesort the left half:  $\Theta(\text{??})$ .
- Mergesort the right half:  $\Theta(\text{??})$ .
- Merge the results:  $\Theta(N)$ .

Total runtime to merge all the way down:  $\sim 384 \text{ AU}$

- Top layer:  $\sim 64 = 64 \text{ AU}$

$\sim 2048 \text{ AU}$     $N=64$

[Video link](#)

We noticed earlier that doing selection sort on an  $N=64$  list will take  $\sim 2048 \text{ AU}$ . But if we sort a list half that big,  $N=32$ , it only takes  $\sim 512 \text{ AU}$ . That's more than twice as fast! So making the arrays we sort smaller has big time savings.

Having two sorted arrays is a good step, but we need to put them together. Luckily, we have merge. Merge, being of linear runtime, only takes  $\sim 64$  AU. So in total, splitting it in half, sorting, then merging, only takes  $512 + 512 + 64 = 1088$  AU. Faster than selection sorting the whole array. But how much faster?

Now, AUs aren't real units, but they're sometimes easier and more intuitive than looking at the runtime. The runtime for our split-in-half-then-merge-them sort is  $N + 2(N/2)^2$ , which is about half of  $N^2$  for selection sort. However, they are still both  $\Theta(N^2)$ .

What if we halved the arrays again? Will it get better? Yes! If we do two layers of merges, starting with lists of size  $N/4$ , the total time will be  $\sim 640$  AU.

**Exercise:** Show why the time is  $\sim 640$  AU by calculating the time to sort each sub-list and then merge them into one array.

What if we halved it again? And again? And again?

Eventually we'll reach lists of size 1. At that point, we don't even have to use selection sort, because a list with one element is already sorted.

This is the essence of **merge sort**:

- If the list is size 1, return. Otherwise:
- Mergesort the left half
- Mergesort the right half
- Merge the results

So what's the running time of **merge sort**?

We know merge itself is order N, so we can start by looking at each layer of merging:

- To get the top layer: merge  $\sim 64$  elements = 64 AU
- Second layer: merge  $\sim 32$  elements, twice = 64 AU
- Third layer:  $\sim 16 \cdot 4 = 64$  AU
- ...

Overall runtime in AU is  $\sim 64 \cdot k$ , where k is the number of layers. Here,  $k = \log_2(64) = 6$ , so the overall cost of mergesort is  $\sim 384$  AU.

Now, we saw earlier that splitting up more layers was faster, but still order  $N^2$ . Is merge sort faster than  $N^2$ ?

...

Yes!

Mergesort has worst case runtime =  $\Theta(N \log N)$ .

- The top level takes  $\sim N$  AU.
- Next level takes  $\sim N/2 + \sim N/2 = \sim N$ .
- One more level down:  $\sim N/4 + \sim N/4 + \sim N/4 + \sim N/4 = \sim N$ .

Thus, total runtime is  $\sim Nk$ , where  $k$  is the number of levels.

How many levels are there? We split the array until it is length 1, so  $k = \log_2(N)$ . Thus the overall runtime is  $\Theta(N \log N)$ .

**Exercise:** Use exact counts to argue for  $\Theta(N \log N)$ . Account for cases where we cannot divide the list perfectly in half.

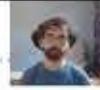
So is  $\Theta(N \log N)$  actually better than  $\Theta(N^2)$ ? Yes! It turns out  $\Theta(N \log N)$  is not much slower than linear time.

	$n$	$n \log_2 n$	$n^2$	$n^3$	$1.5^n$	$2^n$	$n!$
$n = 10$	< 1 sec	< 1 sec	< 1 sec	< 1 sec	< 1 sec	< 1 sec	4 sec
$n = 30$	< 1 sec	< 1 sec	< 1 sec	< 1 sec	< 1 sec	18 min	$10^{25}$ years
$n = 50$	< 1 sec	< 1 sec	< 1 sec	< 1 sec	11 min	36 years	very long
$n = 100$	< 1 sec	< 1 sec	< 1 sec	1 sec	12,892 years	$10^{17}$ years	very long
$n = 1,000$	< 1 sec	< 1 sec	1 sec	18 min	very long	very long	very long
$n = 10,000$	< 1 sec	< 1 sec	2 min	12 days	very long	very long	very long
$n = 100,000$	< 1 sec	2 sec	3 hours	32 years	very long	very long	very long
$n = 1,000,000$	1 sec	20 sec	12 days	31,710 years	very long	very long	very long

## Wrapup

**Summary**

Theoretical analysis of algorithm performance requires **careful thought**.



- There are **no magic shortcuts** for analyzing code.
- In our course, it's OK to do exact counting or intuitive analysis.
  - Know how to sum  $1 + 2 + 3 + \dots + N$  and  $1 + 2 + 4 + \dots + N$ .
  - We won't be writing mathematical proofs in this class.
- Many runtime problems you'll do in this class resemble one of the five problems from today. See textbook, study guide, and discussion for more practice.
- This topic has one of the highest skill ceilings of all topics in the course.

Different solutions to the same problem, e.g. sorting, may have different runtimes.

- $N^2$  vs.  $N \log N$  is an enormous difference.
- Going from  $N \log N$  to  $N$  is nice, but not a radical change.

[Video link](#)

**Takeaways**

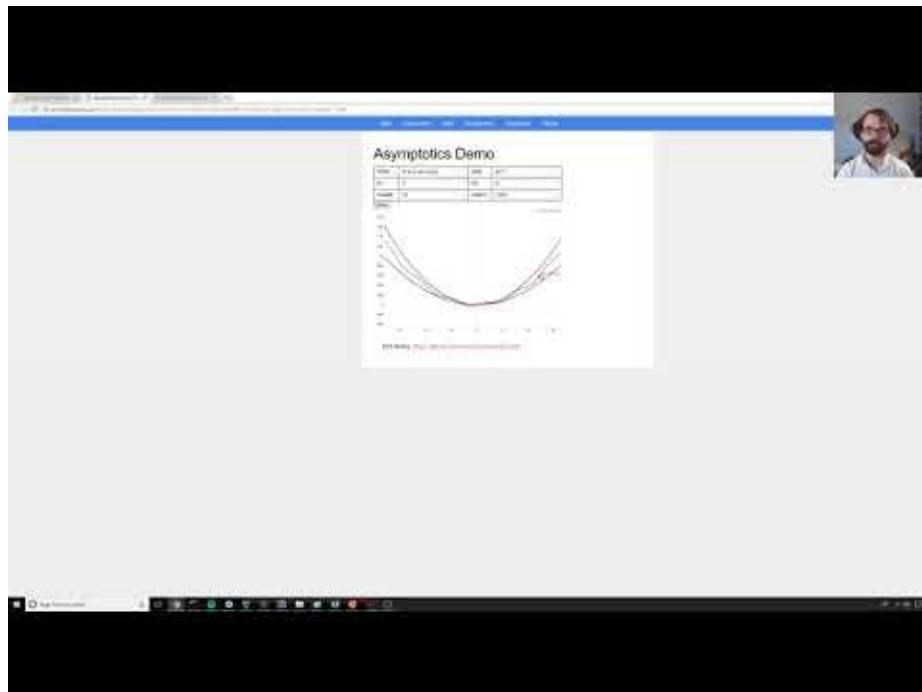
- There are no magic shortcuts for analyzing code runtime.
- In our course, it's OK to do exact counting or intuitive analysis.
- Know how to sum  $1 + 2 + 3 + \dots + N$  and  $1 + 2 + 4 + \dots + N$ .
- We won't be writing mathematical proofs in this class.
- Many runtime problems you'll do in this class resemble one of the five problems from today. See textbook, study guide, and discussion for more practice.
- This topic has one of the highest skill ceilings of all topics in the course. All the tools are here, but **practice** is your friend!
- Different solutions to the same problem, e.g. sorting, may have different runtimes (with big enough differences for the runtime to go from impractical to practical!).
- $N^2$  vs.  $N \log N$  is an enormous difference.
- Going from  $N \log N$  to  $N$  is nice, but not a radical change.

Hopefully this set of examples has provided some good practice with the techniques and patterns of runtime analysis. Remember, there are no magic shortcuts, but you have to tools to approach the problems. Go forth and analyze!!

# Asymptotics, Part 3

In this section, we'll wrap up our discussion of asymptotics. This section introduces two more Big letters, O and Omega. We'll also explore the idea of amortized runtimes and their analysis. Finally, we'll end on empirical analysis of runtimes and a sneak preview of complexity theory.

## Big O



[Video link](#)

Earlier, we used Big Theta to describe the order of growth of functions as well as code pieces. Recall that if  $R(N) \in \Theta(f(N))$ , then  $R(N)$  is both upper and lower bounded by  $\Theta(f(N))$ . Describing runtime with both an upper and lower bound can informally be thought of as runtime "equality".

Some examples:

function $R(N)$	Order of growth
$N^3 + 3N^4$	$\Theta(N^4)$
$N^3 + 1/N$	$\Theta(N^3)$
$5 + 1/N$	$\Theta(1)$
$Ne^N + N$	$\Theta(Ne^N)$
$40 \sin(N) + 4N^2$	$\Theta(N^2)$

For example,  $N^3 + 3N^4 \in \Theta(N^4)$ . It is both upper and lower bounded by  $N^4$ .

On the other hand, Big O can be thought of as a runtime inequality, namely, as "less than or equal". For example, all of the following are true:  $N^3 + 3N^4 \in O(N^4)$   $N^3 + 3N^4 \in O(N^6)$   $N^3 + 3N^4 \in O(N!)$   $N^3 + 3N^4 \in O(N^{N!})$

In other words, if a function, like the one above, is upper bounded by  $N^4$ , then it is also upper bounded by functions that themselves upper bound  $N^4$ .  $N^3 + 3N^4$  is "less than or equal to" all of these functions in the asymptotic sense.

Recall the formal definition of Big Theta:  $R(N) \in \Theta(f(N))$  means that there exists positive constants  $k_1, k_2$  such that:

$k_1 \cdot f(N) \leq R(N) \leq k_2 \cdot f(N)$  for all values of  $N$  greater than some  $N_0$  (a very large  $N$ ).

Similarly, here's the formal definition of Big O:  $R(N) \in O(f(N))$  means that there exists positive constants  $k_2$  such that:

$R(N) \leq k_2 \cdot f(N)$  for all values of  $N$  greater than some  $N_0$  (a very large  $N$ ).

Observe that this is a looser condition than Big Theta since Big O does not care about the lower bound.

## Runtime Analysis Subtleties

**Dup4 Runtime, A Trick Question**



Let  $R(N)$  be the runtime of the code below as a function of  $N$ .

- What is the order of growth of  $R(N)$ ?
  - A.  $R(N) \in \Theta(1)$
  - C.  $R(N) \in \Theta(N^2)$
  - B.  $R(N) \in \Theta(N)$
  - D. Something else (depends on the input).

```
public boolean dup4(int[] a) {
 int N = a.length;
 for (int i = 0; i < N; i += 1) {
 for (int j = i + 1; j < N; j += 1) {
 if (a[i] == a[j]) {
 return true;
 }
 }
 }
 return false;
}
```

[Video link](#)

To demonstrate why it is useful to use Big O, let's go back to our duplicate-finding functions consider the following exercises.

**Exercise:** Let  $R(N)$  be the runtime of `dup3` as a function of  $N$ , the length of the array. What is the order of growth of  $R(N)$ ?

```
public boolean dup3(int[] a) {
 int N = a.length;
 for (int i = 0; i < N; i += 1) {
 for (int j = 0; j < N; j += 1) {
 if (a[i] == a[j]) {
 return true;
 }
 }
 }
 return false;
}
```

**Answer:**  $R(N) \in \Theta(1)$ , it's constant time! That's because there's a bug in `dup3`: it always compares the first element with itself. In the very first iteration,  $i$  and  $j$  are both 0, so the function always immediately returns. Bummer!

Let's fix up the bug in `dup4` and try it again.

**Exercise:** Let  $R(N)$  be the runtime of `dup4` as a function of  $N$ , the length of the array. What is the order of growth of  $R(N)$ ?

```

public boolean dup4(int[] a) {
 int N = a.length;
 for (int i = 0; i < N; i += 1) {
 for (int j = i + 1; j < N; j += 1) {
 if (a[i] == a[j]) {
 return true;
 }
 }
 }
 return false;
}

```

**Answer:** This time, the runtime depends on not only the length of the input, but also the array's contents. In the best case,  $R(N) \in \Theta(1)$ . If the input array contains all of the same element, then no matter how long it is, dup4 will return on the first iteration.

On the other hand, in the worst case,  $R(N) \in \Theta(N^2)$ . If the array has no duplicates, then dup4 will never return early, and the nested for loop will result in quadratic runtime.

This exercise highlights one limitation of Big Theta. Big Theta expresses the exact order of as a function of the input size. However, if the runtime depends on more than just the size of the input, then we must qualify our statements into different cases before using Big Theta. Big O does away with this annoyance. Rather than having to describe both the best and worse case, for the example above, we can simply say that the runtime of dup4 is  $O(N^2)$ . Sometimes dup4 is faster, but it's at worst quadratic.

## Big O Abuse

### Question: Link TBA

Which statement gives you more information about the runtime of a piece of code?



- A. The worst case runtime is  $\Theta(N^2)$ .
- B. The runtime is  $O(N^2)$ .

Runtime is  $\Theta(N^2)$  in the worst case.

```

public boolean dup4(int[] a) {
 int N = a.length;
 for (int i = 0; i < N; i += 1) {
 for (int j = i + 1; j < N; j += 1) {
 if (a[i] == a[j]) {
 return true; ...
 }
 }
 }
}

```

Runtime is  $O(N^2)$

```

public static void printLength(int[] a) {
 System.out.println(a.length);
}

public boolean dup4(int[] a) {
 int N = a.length;
 for (int i = 0; i < N; i += 1) {
 for (int j = i + 1; j < N; j += 1) {
 if (a[i] == a[j]) {
 return true; ...
 }
 }
 }
}

```

[Video link](#)

Consider the following statements:

1. The most expensive room in the hotel is \$639 per night.
2. Every room in the hotel is less than or equal to \$639 per night.

Which statement gives you more information about a hotel?

The first one. The second statement provides only an upper bound on room prices, ie. an inequality. The first statement tells you not only the upper bound of room prices, but also that this upper bound is reached. For example, consider a cheap hotel whose most expensive room is \$89/night and an expensive one whose most expensive room is \$639/night. Both hotels fulfill the second statement, but the first statement narrows it down to just the latter hotel.

**Exercise:** Which statement gives you more information about the runtime of a piece of code?

1. The worst case runtime is  $\Theta(N^2)$ .
2. The runtime is  $O(N^2)$ . **Answer:** Similar to the hotel problem, the first statement provides more information. Consider the following method:

```
public static void printLength(int[] a) {
 System.out.println(a.length);
}
```

Both this simple method and dup4 have runtime  $O(N^2)$ , so knowing statement 2 would not be able to distinguish between these. But statement 1 is more precise, and is only true for dup4.

In the real world, and oftentimes in conversation, Big O is often used where in places where Big Theta would be more informative. We saw one good reason for this -- it frees us from needing to use qualifying statements. However, while the looser statement is true, it's not as useful as a Big Theta bound.

**Note:** Big O is NOT the same as "worst case". But it is often used as such.

To summarize the usefulness of Big O:

- It allows us to make simple statements without case qualifications, in cases where the runtime is different for different inputs.
- Sometimes, for particularly tricky problems, we (the computer science community) don't know the exact runtime, so we may only state an upper bound.
- It's a lot easier to write proofs for Big O than Big Theta, like we saw in finding the

runtime of mergesort in the previous chapter. This is beyond the scope of this course.

## Big Omega

[Video link](#)

To round out our understanding of runtimes, let's also define the complement of Big O, to describe lower bounds.

While Big Theta can be informally thought of as runtime equality and Big O represents "less than or equal", Big Omega can be thought of as the "greater than or equal". For example, in addition to knowing that  $N^3 + 3N^4 \in \Theta(N^4)$ , all of the following statements are true:

$$N^3 + 3N^4 \in \Omega(N^4) \quad N^3 + 3N^4 \in \Omega(N^3) \quad N^3 + 3N^4 \in \Omega(\log N) \quad N^3 + 3N^4 \in \Omega(1)$$

If  $N^3 + 3N^4 \in \Theta(N^4)$ , then the function  $N^3 + 3N^4$  is also "greater than or equal to"  $N^4$ . The function must also grow faster than any function slower asymptotically than  $N^4$ , eg. 1 and  $N^3$ .

There's two common uses for Big Omega:

1. It's used to prove Big Theta runtime. If  $R(N) = O(f(N))$  and  $R(N) = \Omega(f(N))$ , then  $R(N) = \Theta(f(N))$ . Sometimes, it's easier to prove O and Ω separately. This is outside the scope of this course.
2. It's used to prove the difficulty of a problem. For example, ANY duplicate-finding algorithm must be  $\Omega(N)$ , because the algorithm must at least look at each element.

Here's a table to summarize the three Big letters:

	Informal Meaning	Example Family	Example Family Members
Big Theta $\Theta(f(N))$	Order of growth is $f(N)$	$\Theta(N^2)$	$N^2/2, 2N^2, N^2 + 38N + 1/N$
Big O $O(f(N))$	Order of growth is less than or equal to $f(N)$	$O(N^2)$	$N^2/2, 2N^2, \log N$
Big Omega $\Omega(f(N))$	Order of growth is greater than or equal to $f(N)$	$\Omega(N^2)$	$N^2/2, 2N^2, 5^N$

## Amortized Analysis (Intuitive Explanation)



### Amortized Analysis (Rigorous)

[Video link](#)

## Grigometh's Urn

Grigometh is a demon dog that looks a bit spooky. He offers you the ability to appear to horses in their dreams, just like how he sometimes appears in your dreams and midterms. However, in return for this ability, you must periodically offer him urnfuls of hay, as tribute. He gives you two payment options:

- Choice 1: Every day, Grigometh eats 3 bushels of hay from your urn.
- Choice 2: Grigometh eats exponentially more hay over time, but comes exponentially less frequently. Specifically:

- On day 1, he eats 1 bushel of hay (total 1)
- On day 2, he eats 2 additional bushels of hay (total 3)
- On day 4, he eats 4 additional bushels of hay (total 7)
- On day 8, he eats 8 additional bushels of hay (total 15)

You want to develop a routine and put a fixed amount of hay in your urn each day. How much hay must you put in the earn each day for each payment scheme? Which is cheaper?

For the first choice, you'd have to put exactly 3 bushels of hay in the urn each day. However, the second choice actually turns out to be a a bit cheaper! You can get away with just putting in 2 bushels of hay in the urn each day. (Try to convince yourself why this is true -- one way to do this is the write out the total amount of hay you contribute after each day. You'll notice that whenever Grigometh comes for his hay snack, you'll always have one extra bushel in the urn after he takes his fill. Neat.)

Bushels aside, notice here that Grigometh's hay consumption per day is effectively constant, and in choice 2, we can describe this situation as **amortized constant** hay consumption.

## AList Resizing and Amortization

It turns out, Grigometh's hay dilemma is very similar to AList resizing from early in the course. Recall that in our implementation of array-based lists, when we call the add method on an AList whose underlying array is full, we need to resize the array. In other words, the add method, when full, must create a new array of larger size, copy over the old elements, and then finally add the new element. How much bigger should our new array be? Recall the following two implementations:

### Implementation 1

```
public void addLast(int x) {
 if (size == items.length) {
 resize(size + RFACTOR);
 }
 items[size] = x;
 size += 1;
}
```

### Implementation 2

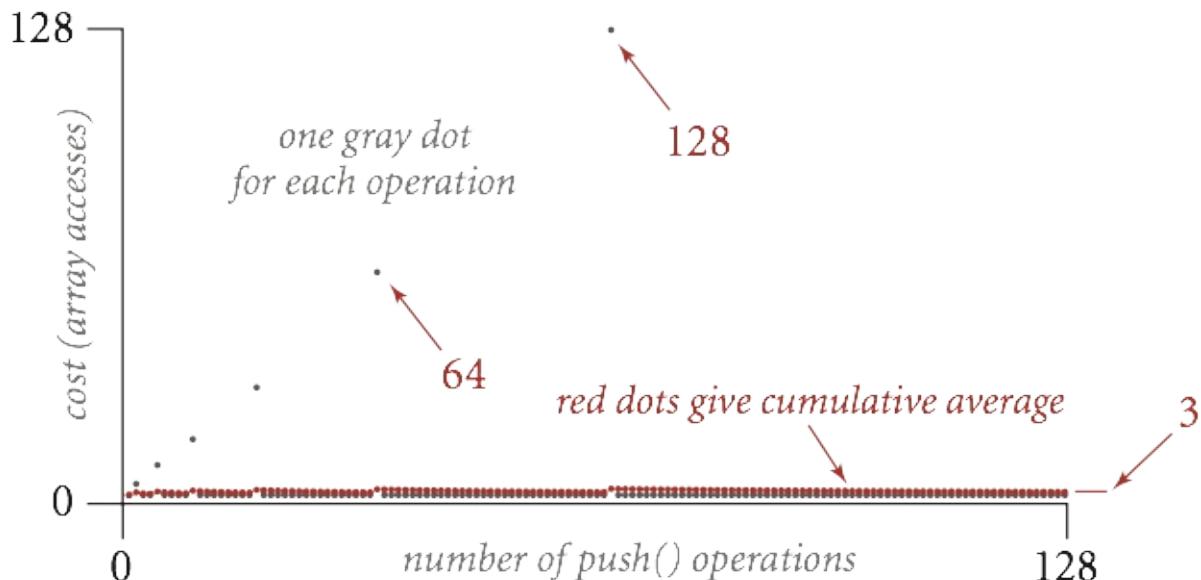
```

public void addLast(int x) {
 if (size == items.length) {
 resize(size * RFACTOR);
 }
 items[size] = x;
 size += 1;
}

```

The first implementation turned out to be unusably bad. When our array fills up, every time a new element is added, the entire array must be copied to a new one. The second implementation, which we called geometric resizing, on the other hand, worked nicely. In fact, this is how Python lists are implemented.

Let's look into the runtime of implementation 2 in more detail. Let RFACTOR be 2. When the array is full, resize doubles its size. Most add operations take  $\Theta(1)$  time, but some are very expensive, and linear to the current size. However, if we average out the cost of expensive adds with resize over all the adds that are cheap, and given that expensive adds with happen half as frequently every time it happens, it turns out that **on average**, the runtime of add is  $\Theta(1)$ . We'll prove this in the next section. In the meantime, here's a graph to illustrate this:



## Amortized Analysis (Rigorous Explanation)

A more rigorous examination of amortized analysis is done here, in three steps:

1. Pick a cost model (like in regular runtime analysis)
2. Compute the average cost of the  $i^{\text{th}}$  operation
3. Show that this average (amortized) cost is bounded by a constant.

Suppose that initially, our ArrayList contains a length-1 array. Let's apply these three steps to ArrayList resizing:

1. For our cost model, we'll only consider array reads and writes. (You could also include other operations into your cost model, such as array creation and the cost of filling in default array values. But it turns out that these will all yield the same result.)
2. Let's compute the cost of a sequence of array adds. Suppose we had the following code and accompanying diagram:

TODO: image

- `x.add(0)` performs 1 write operation. No resizing. Total: 1 operation
- `x.add(1)` resizes and copies the existing array (1 read, 1 write), and then writes the new element. Total: 3 operations
- `x.add(2)` resizes and copies the existing array (2 reads, 2 writes), and then writes the new element. Total: 5 operations
- `x.add(3)` does not resize, and only writes the new element. Total: 1 operations
- `x.add(4)` resizes and copies the existing array (4 reads, 4 writes), and then writes the new element. Total: 9 operations

It's easier to keep track of this in a table:

Insert #	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13
a[i] write cost	1	1	1	1	1									
Resize/copy cost	0	2	4	0	8									
Total cost for #	1	3	5	1	9									
Cumulative cost	1	4	9	10	19									

**Exercise:** Fill out the rest of this table. Total cost is the total cost for one particular insert.

Cumulative cost is the cost for all inserts so far.

**Answer:**

Insert #	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
a[i] write cost	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Resize/copy cost	0	2	4	0	8	0	0	0	16	0	0	0	0
Total cost for #	1	3	5	1	9	1	1	1	17	1	1	1	1
Cumulative cost	1	4	9	10	19	20	21	22	39	40	41	42	43

So what is the average cost of the a sequence of adds? For 13 adds, this average cost is  $44/13 = 3.14$  per add. But for the first 8 adds, the average cost is  $39/8 = 4.875$  per add.

1. Is the average (amortized) cost bounded by a constant? It seems like it might be bounded by 5. But just by looking at the first 13 adds, we cannot be completely sure.

We'll now introduce the idea of "potential" to aid us in solving this amortization mystery. For each operation  $i$ , eg. each add or Grigometh visit, let  $c_i$  be the true cost of the operation, while  $a_i$  be some arbitrary amortized cost of the operation.  $a_i$ , a constant, must be the same for all  $i$ .

Let  $\Phi_i$  be the potential at operation  $i$ , which is the cumulative difference between amortized and true cost:  $\Phi_i = \Phi_{i-1} + a_i - c_i$

$a_i$  is an arbitrary constant, meaning we can chose it. **If we chose  $a_i$  such that  $\Phi_i$  is never negative and  $a_i$  is constant for all  $i$ , then the amortized cost is an upper bound on the true cost.** And if the true cost is upper bounded by a constant, then we've shown that it is on average constant time!

Let's try this for Grigometh's hay tribute. For each day  $i$ , the actual cost is how much hay Grigometh eats on that day. The amortized cost is how much hay we put in the urn on that day -- let's assume that's 3. Let the initial potential be  $\Phi_0 = 0$ :

Day (i)	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13
Actual cost $c_i$	1	2	0	4	0	0	0	0	8	0	0	0	0
Amortized cost $a_i$	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3
Change in potential	2	1	3	-1	3	3	3	3	-5	3	3	3	3
Potential $\Phi_i$	2	3	6	5	8	11	14	17	12	15	18	21	24

If we let  $a_i = 3$ , the potential never falls negative -- in fact, it looks like after many days, we will keep on having a surplus of hay for Grigometh, if we add 3 bushels per day. We'll save the rigorous proof of this for another course, but hopefully the trend looks convincing enough. So Grigometh's hay tribute is on average constant.

**Exercise:** We'd like to conserve as much hay as possible. Show that we can satisfy

Grigometh's hunger and never have negative potential even if we set  $a_i = 2$ .

Now back to ArrayList resizing.

**Exercise:** What is the value of  $c_i$  for ArrayList add operations? If we let the amortized cost  $a_i = 5$ , will the potential ever become negative? Is there a smaller amortized cost that works? Fill out a table like the one for Grigometh to help with this.

**Answer:**  $c_i$  is the total cost for array resizing and adding the new element, where  $c_i = 2i + 1$  if  $i$  is a power of 2, and  $c_i = 1$  otherwise.

Insert #	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
Actual cost $c_i$	1	3	5	1	9	1	1	1	17	1	1	1	1
Amortized cost $a_i$	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5
Change in potential	4	2	0	4	-4	4	4	4	-12	4	4	4	4
Potential $\Phi_i$	4	6	6	10	6	10	14	18	6	10	14	18	22

By looking at the trend, the potential should never be negative (proof for this is omitted). Intuitively, for high-cost operations, we use the previous low-cost operations to store up potential.

Finally, we've shown that ArrayList add operations are indeed amortized constant time. Geometric resizing (multiplying by the RFACTOR) leads to good list performance.

## Summary

- Big O is an upper bound ("less than or equals")
- Big Omega is a lower bound ("greater than or equals")
- Big Theta is both an upper and lower bound ("equals")
- Big O does NOT mean "worst case". We can still describe worst cases using Big Theta
- Big Omega does NOT mean "best case". We can still describe best cases using Big Theta
- Big O is sometimes colloquially used in cases where Big Theta would provide a more precise statement
- Amortized analysis provides a way to prove the average cost of operations.
- If we chose  $a_i$  such that  $\Phi_i$  is never negative and  $a_i$  is constant for all  $i$ , then the amortized cost is an upper bound on the true cost.